

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ
ЖИТОМИРСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ «ЖИТОМИРСЬКА ПОЛІТЕХНІКА»**

**Марина КОШЕЛЄВА
Ірина БЛЯК
Наталія ПАНЬКОВИК**

**THE NON-FINITE FORMS
OF THE VERB**

Безособові форми дієслова

Навчальний посібник

Житомир
Державного університету «Житомирська політехніка»
2024

УДК 811.111:81'367.625

К76

*Рекомендовано до друку Вченою Радою Державного університету «Житомирська політехніка»
(протокол № __ від __ _____ 2024 року)*

Рецензенти:

Л.Ф. Могельницька – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент, завідувач кафедри теоретичної та прикладної лінгвістики Державного університету «Житомирська політехніка».

Л.П. Войналович – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент кафедри англійської мови та прикладної лінгвістики

Житомирського державного університету імені Івана Франка.

Н.С. Бурмакіна – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент, доцент кафедри іноземних мов Поліського національного університету.

Кошелева М.В., Біляк І.В., Паньковик Н.М.

К76

The Non-finite Forms of the Verb. Неособові форми дієслова: Навчальний посібник /

Кошелева М.В., Біляк І.В., Паньковик Н.М. – Житомир: 2024. – 138 с.

ISBN

Навчальний посібник призначено проведення практичних занять та самостійної роботи з навчальної дисципліни «Практична граматики англійської мови» для здобувачів вищої освіти студентів II курсу освітнього ступеня «бакалавр» для підготовки за спеціальністю: 014 «Середня освіта» (Освітньо-професійна програма 014.021: «Середня освіта. Англійська мова і зарубіжна література»).

УДК 811.111:81'367.625

ISBN

© Кошелева М.В., Біляк І.В., Паньковик Н.М.

CONTENTS

Передмова

The Infinitive

Revision

The Participle I

Revision

Participle II

Revision

THE GERUND

Revision

Revision on the Verbals

Передмова

Навчальний посібник має на меті сформувати необхідні знання, вміння та навички у студентів-філологів факультету педагогічних технологій з практичної граматики англійської мови з теми "The Non-Finite Forms of the Verb".

Посібник складається з трьох розділів: "Інфінітив", "Дієприкметник" і "Герундій". Кожен розділ містить систематизований опис граматичного явища, ілюстрований великою кількістю прикладів, а також вправи для автоматизації отриманих навичок. Посібник містить велику кількість вправ на визначення форм і функцій інфінітива, дієприкметника і герундія, типів конструкцій з неособовими формами, переклад речень з англійської мови на українську та з української мови на англійську. Запропоновані завдання відрізняються ступенем складності та різноманітністю. Зміст і характер завдань визначаються їхнім основним призначенням – сприяти найефективнішому засвоєнню всього розмаїття граматичних форм і конструкцій англійської мови, формуванню й закріпленню навичок та умінь володіння граматично правильною англійською мовою.

What are finite and non-finite verbs in English?

Verbs in English can be classified into two main types: finites and non-finites. A finite verb in a sentence has both a subject and shows tense. Non-finite verbs, on the other hand, lack a specific tense and do not necessarily have a subject in the same way. Non-finite verb forms include three types of verbals: participles, gerunds, and infinitives. There are four non-finite forms in total: the infinitive, the gerund, the present participle (Participle I), and the past participle (Participle II).

Verbals exhibit dual characteristics, acting both as verbs and in a nominal capacity. Participles blend verb and adjective traits, while gerunds and infinitives combine verb characteristics with those of nouns.

The tense of verbals is not absolute but relative to the main finite verb in a sentence. It does not indicate whether the action happened in the past, present, or future but rather its timing relative to the finite verb's action—simultaneous or prior.

All verbals can participate in predicative constructions, where they form syntactic units alongside a nominal (noun or pronoun). In these constructions, the verbal element relates to the nominal element similarly to how a predicate relates to a subject in a sentence. Predicative constructions typically function as integral parts of sentences.

Finite Verbs	Non-finite Verbs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Finite verbs are used to represent tense, person or number. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-finite verbs have no tense.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Finite verbs take the simple present and the simple past form of the particular verb. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-finite verbs can be used in their infinitive, present participle or past participle form.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Finite verbs always agree with the subject performing the action in the sentence. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-finite verbs do not agree with the subject in a sentence.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most often, the finite verb can be found next to the subject in a sentence. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-finite verbs are sometimes found in the beginning of a sentence. In certain cases, the non-finite verb is found immediately after the finite verb in the sentence.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A finite verb appears to be a part of an independent clause and can help the clause stand alone by making complete sense of what is being conveyed, 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A non-finite verb often constitutes a phrase and does not make sense when considered separately.

THE INFINITIVE

The dual nature of the infinitive

The infinitive is a non-finite form of the verb which denotes a process in a broad sense. Serving as the foundational form of the verb, it stands as its representative in dictionaries.

Formally, the infinitive is marked by the particle "to" (e.g., "to see"). In its negative form, the particle "not" precedes the infinitive (e.g., "not to see"). The non-perfect infinitive in the common aspect, the active voice is treated as the initial form of the verb, which represents the verb in dictionaries.

The infinitive possesses a dual characteristic: it merges the features of the verb with those of the noun.

The nominal character of the infinitive is evident in its syntactic roles, which closely resemble those of nouns, such as:

1) the subject of the sentence

e.g. *It is useful to know how to swim. To be treated warmly is pleasant.*

2) predicative (a part of compound nominal predicate)

e.g. *The trouble was to get money from her husband. Her dream is to become a lawyer.*

3) object

e.g. *I forgot to buy bread. She wishes to stay with us.*

4) attribute

e.g. *I have a lot of work to be done.*

5) adverbial modifier: of purpose, of result, of comparison, of attendant circumstances, of time, of condition, of parenthesis

The morphological features of the infinitive

The morphological characteristics are evidenced in the three morphological categories of the infinitive:

- 1) the category of aspect/ Common aspect – Continuous aspect
- 2) the category of voice (in case of transitive verbs)/ Active voice – Passive voice
- 3) the category of correlation/ Perfect – Non-perfect

Voice Distinctions	Aspect distinctions			
	Non-Perfect (Indefinite)	Perfect	Continuous	Perfect Continuous
Active Voice	to +V ₀ <i>to do</i>	to have +V ₃ , -ed <i>to have done</i>	to be+V-ing <i>to be doing</i>	to have been+ V-ing <i>to have been doing</i>
Passive Voice	to be+V ₃ , -ed <i>to be done</i>	to have been+ V ₃ , -ed <i>to have been done</i>	absent	absent

The category of aspect is expressed by the opposition of two forms: common aspect – continuous aspect: to do – to be doing; to have done – to have been doing. We use a continuous infinitive for something happening over a period. Non-perfect infinitive in the continuous aspect suggests that actions and events are/were/will be continuing around the time we are talking about. Perfect infinitive in the continuous aspect refers to the past and emphasizes the duration of the action of the infinitive, which happened before the action of the verb.

The category of voice is expressed by the opposition of two forms: active voice – passive voice: to do – to be done; to have done – to have been done. Active infinitives point out that the actions are directed from the subject. E.g. He hopes to be offered a promotion. (non-perfect, common, passive) Passive infinitives indicate that the actions are directed to the subjects.

Note: In sentences with the construction *there is / are* we can use either Active or Passive Infinitive without any change in the meaning. We use the Active Infinitive if the attention is paid to the action itself.

E.g.: *There is a lot of work to do / to be done.*

The category of correlation is expressed by the opposition of two forms: non-perfect – perfect: to do – to have done; to be doing – to have been doing; to be done – to have been done. . Non—perfect infinitive refers to the time of the action denoted by the verb-predicate Perfect infinitive refers to the past and shows that the action of the infinitive happened before the action of the verb.

The infinitive has the following forms:

	Active	Passive
Indefinite	to write	to be written
Continuous	to be writing	—
Perfect	to have written	to have been written
Perfect Continuous	to have been writing	—

1. The **Indefinite Infinitive Active or Passive** expresses an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb, so it may refer to the present, past or future.

1) I'm always glad **to meet you**.

(The Indefinite Infinitive Active)

2. The **Continuous Infinitive Active** also denotes an action simultaneous with that expressed by the finite verb, but it is an action in progress. The continuous infinitive is not only a tense form, but also an aspect form, expressing both time relations and the manner in which the action is presented.

I'm glad **to be writing** a new letter now.

(The Continuous Infinitive)

3. The **Perfect Infinitive Active or Passive** denotes an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.

I'm glad **to have seen** you.

(The Perfect Infinitive Active)

After such verbs as *to mean, to expect, to intend, to hope* used in the Past Indefinite, the Perfect Infinitive shows that the hope or intention was not carried out.

I hoped to have gone abroad.

4. The **Perfect Continuous Infinitive** denotes an action which lasted, a certain time before the action of the finite verb. It is not only a tense form, but also an aspect form.

I'm glad **to have been visiting Japan** for two years.

1. Comment on the forms of the Infinitives.

1. When I go on holiday, I ask Mum to look after my houseplants. 2. In the morning Mr. Dalton was nowhere to be seen. 3. He seemed to be reading my mind. 4. You have your own life to consider. 5. The agent must have misunderstood the chief. 6. He was witty and clever and he made me laugh. 7. But what kind of rules might be required? 8. They seem to have been fighting all their lives. 9. The manuscript appears to have been written in Greek. 10. This is a date still to be agreed. 11. Brian can still be watching the western. 12. They believed the soldier to have taken unofficial leave. 13. Don't you understand that all the personal sentiments ought to have been put aside? 14. At times, lightning decisions had to be made. 15. It was vital for her presence to be felt in New York from time to time.

2. Give all the possible forms of the following Infinitives.

To do, to give, to live, to sit, to offer, to raise, to set, to sell, to leave, to go, to inform, to perform, to write, to run, to make.

3. Choose the sentences where the forms of the infinitive denote:

- 1) an action simultaneous with or posterior to the action expressed by the finite verb;
- 2) an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb;
- 3) an action that lasted a certain time before the action expressed by the finite verb.

1. It is very kind of you to have done it for us. 2. I asked Jack to cut sandwiches for all of us. 3. Here's the saucepan to boil water in. 4. I've got a list of foodstuffs to be bought before Charles comes. 5. Granny seems to have been cooking since Father left. 6. She is said to have been taken to hospital. 7. He was told to help his younger sister and unbutton her coat. 8. He smokes a lot and is sure to be ruining his health. 9. She wants to take an English course. 10. I know him to have been an outstanding politician. 11. He seemed to have gained all he wanted. 12. I have been advised to rest. 13. I am quite aware how improbable that sounds but it happens to be the truth. 14. He was believed to be preparing a report on the incident. 15. Two prisoners were thought to have escaped. 16. He was thrilled to have completed the project ahead of schedule. 17. She regretted not to have studied harder before the exam. 18. They were excited to have explored the ruins extensively before the sun set. 19. He was relieved to have finished his chores before his parents arrived home. 20. She was delighted to have read the book before it became popular. 21. They were eager to have planned the trip before the travel restrictions were imposed. 22. He was surprised to have finished the marathon in record time. 23. She was proud to have completed her thesis before the deadline.

4. Translate into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the use of the active and passive infinitive.

1. I am happy to have given you this chance. 2. I'm happy to be given this chance. 3. I'm sorry to disturb you. 4. I'm sorry to have been disturbed as I couldn't finish my talk with her. 5. We are pleased to tell you that your son has got the first prize. 6. We were pleased to be told that our son had got the first prize. 7. She is glad to have read your book. 8. She is glad to have been read your book to as she can't read herself now. 9. Our family will be delighted to visit you next year. 10. We were delighted to be visited by Larry and his family. 11. She is glad to study French. 12. She is glad to have studied French. 13. It is nice to be doing such interesting work. 14. It is nice to have been doing this work for many years.

5. Use the infinitive in different forms in the active voice or passive voice.

1. There is no necessity (to pick up) the papers, I'll bring them. 2. He is said (to travel) for a month and he hasn't come back yet. 3. My younger brother hates (to read) but he likes (to read to). 4. What they want is (to have) English twice a week. 5. They are reported (to discuss) it during the conference. 6. He is in the garage and must (to repair) his car. 7. I've got something (to tell) him and he has the right (to tell) what happened to his son. 8. People usually prefer (to treat) but Mother likes (to treat) anybody who comes to see us to something delicious. 9. We expect him (to arrive) in a day or two. 10. She must be lucky (to meet) such a wonderful man and (to marry) him. 11. There are so many trifles (to forget) but (to forget) everything is impossible. 12. I don't want (to sell) my fur-coat but I've got lots of things (to sell) as I don't need them. 13. The boys seem (to play) foot- ball since morning. 14. I don't know what she is doing. She may (to sleep) now. 15. All I want is (to find) the right diet (to slim down). 16. I won't have (to spend) the money he gave me though money is supposed (to spend). 17. Teachers like (to ask) students and students hate (to ask). 18. I prefer (to choose) and not (to choose). 19. He thinks that (to attack) your enemy is better than (to attack). 20. The project is (to improve) but there's nobody (to improve) it. 21. Everyone wants (to respect). 22. I have nothing (to hide). 23. By that time there was no one (to speak up). 24. Mr. Greatrex must (to plan) his trip long ago. 25. He is good enough (to give) the first prize. 26. It is useless (to govern) them in the same way. 27. Mum left the washing (to sort out). 28. Dick is said (to spend) all his money while travelling all over the world. 29. Fred seems (to work) in the garden since morning. 30. His younger sister appears (always to complain). 31. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to look) at me. 32.

I'm sorry (to bother) you in this stupid way. 33. Lady Franklin was horrified at herself, (to ask) his name, (to be told) his name and (to forget) it! 34. Don't you worry about him; he is sure (to have) a good time at the moment. 35. This man must (to sit) here for about an hour. Who can he (to wait) for? 36. You should (to ask) someone (to help) you (to carry) this heavy box. This might not (to happen). 37. Passing by a radio shop he suddenly remembered (to buy) some tape for his recorder. 38. I'm sorry (to disappoint) you but I didn't mean anything of the kind.

6. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the active and passive forms of the infinitive.

1. Моя сестра зраділа, коли її запросили на день народження. 2. Я не люблю втручатися в чужі справи. 3. Мені довелося редагувати статтю, яку мають опублікувати найближчим часом. 4. Нічого не поробиш. Доведеться прийняти їхню пропозицію. 5. Дівчинка любила, коли її цілували перед сном. 6. вони були раді допомогти рідним у біді. 7. Білл очікує, що його зустрінуть в аеропорту і відвезуть у готель. 8. Не терплю, коли над кимось насміхаються. 9. Йому абсолютно нічого робити. 10. Мені приносить радість робити Вам приємні подарунки. А Вам приємно, коли Вам роблять подарунки? 11. Він зробив вигляд, що не впізнав нас, і пройшов повз. 12. роботу слід завершити до 7-ї години. 13. Давайте послухаємо останні звістки. 14. Коли я був дитиною, мене змушували провітрювати кімнату перед сном. 15. Я хочу, щоб мені сказали правду. 16. Меггі пошкодувала, що не попередила батьків про те, що затримується. 17. Цей танець змусив його згадати молодість. 18. Не може бути, щоб він усе ще сидів у читальному залі. Напевно він уже пішов. 19. Я хочу, щоб мені довіряли. 20. Діти люблять, коли їм читають уголос. 21. Що змушує його так думати? 22. Чому ви дозволяєте читати йому під час їжі? 23. Давайте не будемо говорити нікому про те, що сталося. 24. Я була задоволена, що подивилася ще одну п'єсу Шекспіра. 25. Чому б вам не відвідати його? 26. Це все, що треба сказати, коли ми зателефонуємо їм.

7. Use the Infinitive in different forms in the active voice.

1. There is no necessity (to pick up) the papers, I'll bring them. 2. He is said (to travel) for a month and he hasn't come back yet. 3. What they want is (to have) English twice a week. 4. They are reported (to discuss) it during the conference. 5. He is in the garage and must (to repair) his car. 6. We expect him (to arrive) in a day or two. 7. She must be lucky (to meet) such a wonderful man and (to marry) him. 8. The boys seem (to play) football since morning. 9. I don't know what she is doing. She may (to sleep) now. 10. He seemed (to watch) her as he hoped (to attract) her attention at some moment. 11. All I want is (to find) the right diet (to slim down). 12. They seem (to watch) TV for five hours!

8. Use the Infinitive in the active or passive voice. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. My younger brother hates (to read) but he likes (to read to). 2. I've got something (to tell) him and he has the right (to tell) what happened to his son. 3. People usually prefer (to treat) but Mother likes (to treat) anybody who comes to see us to something delicious. 4. I won't have (to spend) the money he gave me though money is supposed (to spend). 5. Teachers like (to ask) students and students hate (to ask). 6. I prefer (to choose) and not (to choose). 7. There are so many trifles (to forget) but (to forget) everything is impossible. 8. I don't want (to sell) my fur-coat but I've got lots of things (to sell) as I don't need them. 9. He thinks that (to attack) your enemy is better than (to attack). 10. Doctor Barbara Shallow is going (to operate) on him and he wants (to operate) on by her. 11. The project is (to improve) but there's nobody (to improve) it.

9. Paraphrase according to the model.

Model: He is sorry that he has said it. He is sorry to have said it.

1. She was sorry that she had missed the beginning of the concert. 2. I am glad that I see all my friends here. 3. I was afraid of going past that place alone. 4. My sister will be thrilled when she

is wearing a dress as lovely as that. 5. We must wait till we hear the examination results. 6. She is happy that she has found such a nice place to live in. 7. I should be delighted if I could join you. 8. He hopes that he will know everything by tomorrow. 9. It is certain that it will rain if you don't take your umbrella. 10. Don't promise that you will do it, if you are not sure that you can. 11. He was happy that he was praised by everybody. 12. He was very proud that he had helped his elder brother.

10. Use the appropriate form of the Infinitive. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. Everyone wants (to respect). 2. I have nothing (to hide). 3. By that time there was no one (to speak up). 4. Mr. Great must (to plan) his trip long ago. 5. He is good enough (to give) the first prize. 6. It is useless (to govern) them in the same way. 7. Mum left the washing (to sort out). 8. Dick is said (to spend) all his money while travelling all over the world. 9. Fred seems (to work) in the garden since morning. 10. His younger sister appears (always to complain). 11. Jack is so weak that not (to support) him would be just a crime. 12. Some people do not like (to praise) and find it (to be) a sort of temptation. 13. He is so lucky (to find) his purse. 14. The baby must (to sleep) now. 15. I want (to take) you to the concert. 16. I want (to take) to the concert by my father. 17. She hoped (to help) her friends. 18. She hoped (to help) by her friends. 19. I hope (to see) you soon. 20. We expect (to be) back in two days. 21. He expected (to help) by the teacher. 22. The children seem (to play) since morning. 23. I am glad (to do) all the homework yesterday. 24. She seems (to work) at this problem ever since she came here. 25. I am sorry (to break) your pen. 26. He seems (to read) a lot. 27. He seems (to read) now. 28. He seems (to read) since morning. 29. He seems (to read) all the books in the library. 30. She is heard (to laugh) in the next room.

11. Translate into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the use of the active and passive Infinitive.

1. I am happy to have given you this chance. 2. I'm happy to be given this chance. 3. I'm sorry to disturb you. 4. I'm sorry to have been disturbed as I couldn't finish my talk with her. 5. We are pleased to tell you that your son has got the first prize. 6. We were pleased to be told that our son had got the first prize. 7. She is glad to have read your book. 8. She is glad to have been read your book to as she can't read herself now. 9. Our family will be delighted to visit you next year. 10. We were delighted to be visited by Larry and his family.

12. Complete the sentences by using suitable form of the Infinitive.

1. I learned ... when I was around six or seven. 2. We've decided ... a new washing-machine. 3. Sam promised not ... late for his own wedding. 4. My boyfriend and I would love ... Venice. 5. You seem ... in a good mood tonight. 6. Felicia appeared ... asleep, but she wasn't. 7. The Martins can't afford ... a house. 8. Try ... to class on time every day. 9. I can't wait ... my family again! It's been a long time. 10. She is very sorry. She didn't mean ... you. 11. My friend offered ... me a little money. 12. Erik is only five, but he intends ... a doctor when he grows up. 13. What time do you expect ... the Hague? 14. I forgot ... some cheese when I went to the grocery store. 15. They are planning ... to the Canaries after they get married.

13. Make up your own sentences. Use an Infinitive in all possible forms. Note the perfect, aspect and voice distinctions of the Infinitive in each sentence.

Model 1: Gloria is happy to teach little children.

Model 2: Little children are happy to be taught funny nursery rhymes.

Model 3: I am happy to be teaching at the University.

Model 4: Nick is happy to have taught French at school.

Model 5: My groupmates and I are happy to have been taught English by native speakers.

The use of the infinitive without the particle "to" (The bare Infinitive)

The bare infinitive (the infinitive without the particle *to*) is used:

1. After the auxiliary verb of the Present, Past or Future Indefinite.

e.g. Does he like the performance? He didn't like the party.

2. After the modal verbs *can (could), dare, may (might), must, needn't, shall, should, will, would* (except the modal verbs *ought to, to be to, to have to*).

e.g. I couldn't convince him to accept your offer. You must do it right now.

3. After verbs of sense perception: *to feel, to hear, to watch, to see, to notice, etc.*

e.g. They saw the accident happen.

I didn't hear you come in.

Note:

1) The verb *to be* after the verb *to feel* is used with the particle *to*.

e.g. She felt his hands to be hot.

2) If the verbs of sense perception are used *in the passive voice*, they are followed by a *to-infinitive*.

e.g. She was seen to enter the office.

4. After the verbs of inducement and permission: *to let (in the meaning of дозволяти) , to make (in the meaning of змусити) , to have (in the meaning of змусити, сказати комусь,щоб..) .*

e.g. I made him wash the dishes. Please, have someone lay the table.

The verb *to help* may be followed by both a *to-infinitive* and a bare infinitive (the latter case is more typical of American English).

e.g. He helped me (to) carry my bag.

Note:

The passive form of the verb to make is followed by a to-infinitive.

e.g. She was made to pay the money back.

5. After modal phrases: *had better ('d better), would rather ('d rather), would sooner ('d sooner).*

e.g. You 'd better not go to work today. He 'd sooner die than marry her. I 'd rather go by car.

6. After phrases with *but, cannot but (can't but), nothing but.*

e.g. I cannot but agree.

She does nothing but grumble.

7. In sentences beginning with *why not ...*

e.g. Why not ask Tom about it? Why not tell her the truth?

8. If two infinitives are connected by the conjunctions *and, or, except, than* the conjunction is followed by a bare infinitive. The conjunctions *except* and *than* may be followed by both bare and *to-infinitives*.

e.g. I intend to sit in the garden and write letters.

Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later? It's easier to persuade people than (to) force them. We had nothing to do except (to) look at the posters.

1. Insert the infinitive. Think whether a bare infinitive or a to-infinitive is necessary.

1. He made me (to do) it all over again. 2. She can (to sing) quite well. 3. He will be able (to swim) very soon. 4. I used (to live) in a caravan. 5. You ought (to go) today. It may (to rain) tomorrow. 6. You needn't (to say) any- thing. Just nod your head and he will (to understand). 7. I want (to see) the house where our president was born. 8. He made her (to repeat) the message. 9. May I (to use) your phone? 10. You needn't (to ask) for permission; you can (to use) it whenever you like. 11. If you want (to get) there before dark you should (to start) at once. 12. I couldn't (to remember) his address. 13. You'll be able (to do) it yourself when you are older. 14. Would you like (to go) now or shall we (to wait) till the end? 15. They won't let us (to leave) the Customs shed till our luggage has been examined. 16. How dare you (to open) my letters! 17. He didn't dare (to argue) with his boss. 18. I used (to smoke) forty cigarettes a day. 19. Will you help me (to move) the bookcase? 20. Susan would sooner (to miss) her classes than (to refuse) to go to a disco. 21. He wouldn't let my baby (to play) with his gold watch. 22. They refused (to accept) the bribe. 23. He is expected (to arrive) in a few days. 24. Mr. Tulip, a keen gardener, was seen (to be planting) some flowers in the back garden. 25. Please let me (to know) your decision as soon as possible. 26. He made us (to wait) for hours. 27. Could you (to tell) me the time, please? 28. You could (to have done) it long ago. 29. We must (to send) him a telegram.

30. I let him (to go) early as he wanted (to meet) his wife. 31. Where would you like (to have) lunch? 32. You can (to leave) your dog with us if you don't (to want) (to take) him with you. 33. I'd like him (to go) to a university but I can't (to make) him (to go). 34. We miss them a great deal and we are happy that they will (to visit) us next month. 35. The boy felt his mother (to touch) his cheek but he pretended (to be sleeping). 36. Mrs. Cool wants her son (to look after) his younger sister. She is going (to be busy) till Friday. 37. Don't let your children (to swim) in the river when they are alone. 38. Who made you (to stay) here and not (to go away)? 39. The neighbours saw Ann (to leave) but didn't (to tell) Fred about it. 40. You'd better (to phone) your grandma. She needs your help and there's nobody (to take care of) her. 41. Can't you do anything but (to ask) silly questions?

2. Use to before the infinitives where possible.

1. We did everything we could ... make him ... join us. 2. You can't ... make me ... do what I don't want 3. Are you sure you can ... afford ... waste another year? 4. You need ... take more care of yourself. 5. It would be very foolish ... let the child ... have his way. 6. Let the next student ... come in now. 7. We'd rather ... take a train than ... fly. 8. Why not ... go with us? Let's ... have fun! 9. You'd better ... stay in bed not ... make your cold ... get worse. 10. I need a car ... get to my country-house. 11. We heard the postman ... come up to the front door and then we saw him ... slip a thick envelope into the box. 12. He can't but ... admire her beauty and talent. 13. You ought ... have told me all this before. 14. We got them ... rebuild the house. 15. He was seen ... enter the house through the back door. 16. – What made you ... terrorize me? – I was made ... do it. 17. Will you be able ... let your son ... decide his future? 18. Father is willing ... let us ... be independent. 19. I won't have you ... say it behind my back. 20. Ever since Simon came he has been made ... look like a fool. 21. Why not ... buy something new and smashing? 22. There's nothing ... do but ... risk it. 23. She felt her shoes ... pinch. 24. You'd better not... say anything, I'd rather ... be left alone. 25. I was made ... scrub the pans and pots. 26. I've never seen anyone ... enjoy food so much.

3. Insert the Infinitive. Think whether a bare Infinitive or a to-Infinitive is necessary.

1. We miss them a great deal and we are happy that they will (to visit) us next month. 2. You could (to have done) it long ago. 3. The boy felt his mother (to touch) his cheek but he pretended (to be sleeping). 4. Mrs. Cool wants her son (to look after) his younger sister. She is going (to be busy) till Friday. 5. Mr. Tulip, a keen gardener, was seen (to be planting) some flowers in the back garden. 6. Don't let your children (to swim) in the river when they are alone. 7. Who made you (to stay) here and not (to go away)? 8. The neighbours saw Val (to leave) but didn't (to tell) Fred about it. 9. Susan would sooner (to miss) her classes than (to refuse) to go to a disco. 10. You'd better (to phone) your Grandma. She needs your help and there's nobody (to take care of) her. 11. I'd rather (to tell) her what I think about their proposal than just (to follow) her advice. 12. They cannot but (to support) your project, otherwise they won't be able (to get) any profit. 13. Why not (to join) the Locks and (to go) to the shooting lodge in Scotland for the weekend. 14. Look! The chair is overturned there. You'll have (to go) and (to put it upright). 15. She usually felt his hands (to be) cold when she touched them. 16. Their family was made (to sell) the house just for nothing and (to leave) for Manchester. 17. – Was she seen (to speak) to the editor? – Yes, my assistant saw her (to do) it. 18. I heard him (to pray) when everybody went to bed.

4. Translate into English using a bare infinitive.

1. Я б краще приєднався до вас і поїхав за місто, ніж сидіти в місті в таку погоду. 2. Ти б краще готувався до заліку з англійської мови, а не дивився телевізор із ранку до вечора. 3. Він радше розлучиться з нею, ніж дозволить їй так поводитися із собою. 4. Я відчуваю, що він хоче сказати мені щось важливе. 5. Її сусіди бачать, що до неї часто приходять якийсь

чоловік. 6. Чому б не з'їздити в Париж на виставку? 7. Мені здається, ніщо не може змусити його кинути тебе. 8. Не можу не сперечатися з тобою. 9. Його теща тільки й робить, що скаржиться на нього. краще б вона не втручалася в їхнє життя. 10. Не треба дзвонити їм зараз. 11. Він змусив мене розповісти йому історії про мою сім'ю. 12. Я чув, як із шумом зачинилися двері, і зрадів, що вони пішли. 13. Я б воліла залишитися з вами, якщо ви не заперечуєте. 14. Фільм починається через десять хвилин. Мені б краще поквапитися. 15. Чому б не зателефонувати йому зараз?

5. Paraphrase the following sentences. Use «had better» to express advice or a polite warning.

Model: I advise you to close the window to keep off the rain. You'd better close the window...

You shouldn't drink such cold milk. You had better not drink such cold milk.

What do you think we should do? What had we better do?

Wouldn't it be a good thing for us to start at once? Hadn't we better start at once?

1. I advise you to take the matters in your own hands. 2. I advise you to wait for an invitation. 3. You shouldn't tell lies. 4. You ought to keep off the grass. 5. What do you think we should do with the car? 6. Oughtn't we to wash the car? 7. Wouldn't it be advisable to sell the car? 8. I advise you to stay at home. 9. Who do you think we should consult? 10. I think you should take things easy. 11. You should not interfere with them. 12. Would it be a good thing for him to keep on asking questions? 13. I advise you to take up art. 14. You should accept the apology. 15. You shouldn't refuse their invitation. 16. Ought we to insist on our point of view? 17. It would be a good thing if you helped me. 18. He ought to take the medicine. 19. You shouldn't display curiosity about people's private life.

6. Paraphrase the following sentences to express preference. Use would rather + an Infinitive.

Model 1: I prefer to stay at home. – I'd rather stay at home.

Model 2: I prefer not to go out. – I'd rather not go out.

Model 3: a) I prefer to stay at home than to go out.

b) I prefer staying at home to going out. – I'd rather stay at home than go out.

1. I prefer to go to the opera. 2. I prefer not to go to the cinema. 3. I prefer to go to the opera than to go to the cinema. 4. I prefer to buy fresh bread. 5. I prefer not to buy stale bread. 6. I prefer to buy fresh bread than stale bread. 7. My friend prefers to take up gymnastics. 8. My friend prefers not to take up athletics. 9. My friend prefers to take up gymnastics than athletics. 10. Helen prefers to stay out of this business. 11. Helen prefers not to be involved in the business. 12. Helen prefers to stay out of this business than to be involved in it. 13. Many people prefer to travel by air. 14. Many people prefer not to travel by train. 15. Many people prefer to travel by air than by train. 16. Some women prefer wearing flat shoes. 17. Some men prefer going to a club to going to a pub. 18. Little girls prefer playing with dolls to playing with cars.

7. Use to before the Infinitives where possible.

1. We did everything we could ... make him ... join us. 2. You can't ... make me ... do what I don't want 3. Are you sure you can ... afford ... waste another year? 4. You need ... take more care of yourself. 5. It would be very foolish ... let the child ... have his way. 6. Let the next student ... come in now. 7. We'd rather ... take a train than ... fly. 8. Why not ... go with us? Let's ... have fun! 9. You'd better ... stay in bed not ... make your cold ... get worse. 10. I need a car ... get to my country-house. 11. We heard the postman ... come up to the front door and then we saw him ... slip a thick envelope into the box. 12. He can't but ... admire her beauty and talent. 13. You ought... have told me all this before. 14. We got them ... rebuild the house. 15. He was seen ... enter the house through the back door. 16. – What made you ... terrorize me? – I was made ... do it. 17. Will you be able ... let your son ... decide his future? 18. Do you like ... listen to good music? 19. Would you like ... listen to good music? 20. That funny scene made me ...

laugh. 21. I like ... play the guitar. 22. My brother can ... speak French. 23. We had ... put on our overcoats because it was cold. 24. They wanted ... cross the river. 25. It is high time for you ... go to bed. 26. May I ... use your telephone? 27. They heard the girl ... cry out with joy. 28. I would rather ... stay at home today. 29. He did not want ... play in the yard any more. 30. Would you like ... go to England? 31. You look tired. You had better ... go home. 32. I wanted ... speak to Nick, but could not... find his telephone number. 33. It is time ... get up. 34. Let me ... help you with your homework. 35. I was planning ... do a lot of things yesterday. 36. I'd like ... speak to you. 37. I think I shall be able ... solve this problem. 38. What makes you ... think you are right? 39. I shall do all I can ... help you. 40. I like ... dance. 41. I'd like ... dance. 42. She made me ... repeat my words several times. 43. I saw him ... enter the room. 44. She did not let her mother ... go away.

8. Respond to the following. Give positive and negative advice. Use had better + an Infinitive.

Model: – I hope you'll drive me to the station. – Sorry, I'm busy. You'd better phone for a taxi.
– I'm rather feverish today. – Are you? You'd better not go out.

1. I'm so hungry and I have to make some calls. – Oh, (to have lunch first) 2. I don't want to call him tonight. – No, (not to put off this conversation) 3. I'm afraid I won't manage this work by tomorrow. – Won't you? (to set to work at once, not to waste time) 4. Do you think I can rely on Willy to help me with the exam? – I think so, only (to ask Helen) 5. I'm afraid my letter won't reach her in time. – Won't it? (to write by e-mail) 6. I'd like to take a computer-science course. – Would you? (to write an application) 7. I've lost my purse. – Have you? (to look for it at home) 8. Oh, my old watch has stopped again! – What a shame! (to buy a new one) 9. It's going to rain. – Is it? (we – go home at once) 10. I don't think this dress is becoming. – No, it isn't, (to choose something else) 11. It's so hot and stuffy here! – Yes, it is. (we – to go out and to have a breath of fresh air) 12. The wind is awfully strong! – It is. I think (not to go out and to stay in) 13. It's much too hot outside. – Yes. You (to put on something very light) 14. I'm afraid my dress is too loose. – Is it? Maybe, you (to have it taken in)

9. Disagree with the suggestion or decline the invitation. State what you prefer doing. Use would rather + an Infinitive.

Model: Take this blue skirt. It's good on you. – No, thanks. I'd rather take the black one.
Would you like to become a doctor? – Oh, no! I'd rather take up art.

Give her a call. – Oh, no! I'd rather not do it.

1. Have a cup of coffee. No, thanks. (to have a cup of tea) 2. Let's have a rest now. (to finish my work first) 3. Take an aspirin. (not to take it) 4. Let's go to the disco. (to stay away tonight) 5. Shall I call your friend? (to do it myself) 6. This hat is very becoming. Take it. (to buy a cheaper one) 7. Shall we go to Westminster by bus? (to go by the Metro. It's much quicker) 8. Shall I switch on the light? (to sit and talk in the twilight) 9. Let's go to the Hermitage. (to go to the country in this hot weather) 10. Will you tell me the whole story? (not to mention it at all) 11. Are you going to help your friend? (not to interfere with her) 12. Shall we discuss your wedding plans? (not to dwell on the subject) 13. Will you start this new business with Adrian? (to keep him from doing it) 14. Are you going with Cecil? (to accept your invitation) 15. Are you planning to take up dancing? (to take up gymnastics) 16. Are you coming with me? (to go on reading) 17. Are you going to write Ned a letter? (to phone him) 18. Shall we celebrate our wedding anniversary at home? (to go to a restaurant) 19. Why don't you find a job? (to be a housewife)

10. Respond to the following statements. Express a suggestion beginning with Why not + an Infinitive.

Model: What a nice dress! – Why not buy it?

1. There's a new film on. 2. I'm tired of waiting. It's really time to go. 3. The visiting professor is giving a lecture on modern American poetry. 4. There's a disco tonight. 5. We're awfully hungry. 6. The music is very beautiful. 7. There's a new exhibition in the Hermitage. 8. I'm sick and tired of your talking. 9. I like the way they are dancing. 10. It's raining. I wouldn't like to go out. 11. Look! What a fine day! 12. You've digressed from the point. (stick to the point) 13. It's so sunny and the snow is sparkling in the sun. 14. You look so gloomy. (cheer up)

The syntactical functions of the infinitive

The verbal nature of the infinitive is shown through its syntactic roles, such as being a simple nominal predicate, a component of the simple verbal predicate, or a part of the compound verbal predicate.

1. In the role of a **simple nominal predicate**, the infinitive can appear in exclamatory sentences where the speaker rejects an idea, or in interrogative "why" sentences, whether affirmative or negative, where the infinitive suggests a course of action.

e.g. Me – a to be his friend!

2. As **part of the simple verbal predicate**, the infinitive is utilized in interrogative and negative forms of the Present, Past, and Future Indefinite tenses.

e.g. Do you agree with my point of view?

3. As **part of the compound verbal predicate** the infinitive is used:

a) With modal verbs *can, may, must, ought (to), shall, will, should, would, dare, need*; modal equivalents *to be (to), to have (to), to be allowed (to)*; modal expressions *had better, would rather*, the infinitive forms part of the compound verbal modal predicate.

e.g. *You should visit a dentist.*

b) With the verbs denoting the beginning, duration or end of the action, the infinitive forms part of the compound verbal aspect predicate.

e.g. *The students began to write.*

The infinitive demonstrates its nominal characteristics through syntactic functions commonly associated with nouns, serving as a subject, object, predicative (as part of a compound nominal predicate), attribute, adverbial modifier, and parenthetical expression.

The infinitive as the subject

As the subject of the sentence the infinitive can either precede the predicate or follow it.

e.g. *To sleep in such a place would be madness. To understand all is to forgive all.*

The case when the infinitive-subject follows the predicate is more common in modern English.

e.g. *It's wonderful to swim on a hot summer day.*

In the latter case the sentence begins with the formal introductory subject *it*, which is not translated into Ukrainian. The predicate in such sentences is mostly compound nominal expressed by a link verb and an adjective-predicative or more seldom a noun-predicative.

If there are two or more homogenous infinitive subjects in a sentence, all of them keep the particle *to*.

e.g. *To stay alone, to have a rest would be wonderful for her.*

1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as subject. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model: To love is to respect. – Любити означає поважати.

1. To watch them playing is just a pleasure. 2. To send him a telegram was the only way out. 3. To look after your aged parents is, no doubt, your duty. 4. To leave them alone was most necessary at that moment. 5. To drive fast in such weather is pretty dangerous. 6. To mention his name in her presence was silly of you. 7. To make Ben marry Angela wasn't wise of his par-

ents. 8. To take long walks before going to bed is good for your health. 9. To cry is useless. It never helps. 10. To climb this mountain is a tremendous risk. 11. To know him was one of the two greatest gifts of my life. 12. To accept you in my house is a great pleasure. 13. To compromise appears advisable. 14. To cut down any more trees would be a crime. 15. To lean out of the window is dangerous. 16. To switch off the light is necessary before you leave.

2. Make up sentences. Use an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as subject.

It	is	easy necessary important possible impossible hard urgent a terrible thing a nice thing a strange thing a dangerous thing an important thing	to survive. to criticize them. to control their business. to establish a joint venture. to express your views. to back him up. to live in fear. to speak foreign languages. to drive at speed. to serve the state. to govern people. to teach children. to cure people. to interfere with somebody. to win the game. to agree upon this matter.
----	----	--	--

To talk to everyone To argue To add some herbs to the tea To listen to some English songs To keep your word To talk about politics To eat breakfast To reveal the secret To waste time To watch English videos	is must be is, no doubt,	useless. helpful. healthy. dangerous. silly. dull. wise. important. impossible. necessary.
---	--------------------------------	---

3. Complete the sentences. Use an Infinitive as subject with the introductory it.

Model: It's useless ... – It's useless to talk with her when she is nervous.

1. It was strange ... 2. It was a surprise ... 3. It will be a shock ... 4. It is important ... 5. It is usually difficult ... 6. It is so dangerous ... 7. Isn't it a pleasure ... 8. It will be easy ... 9. It is a great problem ... 10. It is useful ... 11. It was wise of you ... 12. It would be nice ...

4. Make up sentences with a to-Infinitive as subject.

Model: Buy a new grammar book. It isn't expensive. – It isn't expensive to buy a new grammar book.

1. Criticize them. It is easy. 2. I have a lot of friends. It's nice. 3. I lay awake all night. It was difficult for me. 4. Read the instruction. It's important. 5. You made such a fuss about a trifle. It was very silly. 6. When you use a computer, you'll see that it's very easy. 7. Understanding this rule isn't difficult. 8. Working with a computer is fascinating. 9. You must buy fresh food. It's important. 10. It'll be delightful if you buy this car. 11. Children mustn't play in the street. It's not safe. 12. Don't use this ladder. It's dangerous.

5. Answer the following questions. Use an Infinitive as a notional subject preceded by the introductory subject it.

Model: When someone is reading for a driver's test, what does it usually take a lot of time to do?
– It usually takes a lot of time to learn the rules in the driver's manual.

1. When a person is taking the road test, what is sometimes difficult? (to be attentive) 2. When driving, what is against the rules? (to drive at speed) 3. What is important before taking a long car trip? (to buy extra parts) 4. What will be necessary if you go on a long car trip? (to have a map) 5. What is advisable before buying a car? (to choose a nice car) 6. What is necessary before driving round a corner? (to look at the traffic lights) 7. What is a must if your car is dirty? (to have it washed) 8. While driving in the country, what is pleasant? (to stop the car and have a swim) 9. When stopped by a policeman, what is advisable? (not to argue with him) 10. When not sure about the way, what is best to do? (to have a look at the map) 11. When getting in a traffic jam, what is necessary? (to be patient) 12. Seeing children cross the street, what is best to do for a driver? (to stop and wait).

6. Translate into English using an infinitive as subject. Underline the notional subject in the sentences with the introductory "it".

1. Палити так шкідливо, але він ніяк не може кинути. 2. Скільки тобі треба часу, щоб закінчити переклад? 3. Говорити з нею - одне задоволення. 4. Дотримання дієти - необхідність, а не примха. 5. Одружитися з нею буде просто подарунком долі. 6. Було нестерпно чути, як вони сваряться щовечора. 7. Не допомогти йому зараз було б неправильним. 8. Зустрітися з ними у Браунів - це сюрприз. 9. Марно переконувати його не розлучатися з нею. 10. Важко повірити в те, що він повернувся. 11. Добре було б порадитися з батьком. 12. Важливо мати хороших друзів. 13. Не попередити його про це було б нечесно. 14. Мені набагато приємніше дарувати подарунки, ніж отримувати їх. 15. Йти в кіно було занадто пізно. 16. З ним приємно мати справу. 17. Вам знадобиться 20 хвилин, щоб дістатися вокзалу. 18. Навчитися писати важче, ніж навчитися читати. 19. Важливо попередити їх вчасно. 20. Мене дуже здивувало, коли я побачив його на концерті: він терпіти не може співу. 21. Пірнати з мосту небезпечно. 22. Їй приносило величезне задоволення, коли її впізнавали на вулиці. 23. Нам знадобилося чимало часу на те, щоб переконати його, що він не правий. 24. Цікаво сходити на цю виставку. 25. Побувати в Брайтоні й не бачити моря було дуже прикро. 26. Нам було важко отримати ці відомості. 27. Залишити дім і чоловіка було дуже серйозним кроком. 28. Ти не повинен навіть думати про це. Говорити про смерть - до нещастя. 29. З Дженіс важко зв'язатися. вона, здається, висить на телефоні весь вечір. 30. Пізнати себе - це знати свої достоїнства і недоліки.

THE INFINITIVE AS PREDICATIVE

In this function the Infinitive is part of a compound nominal predicate and follows the link verb to be as a rule.

e.g. To ask her questions is to irritate her.

Not to warn him was to let him down.

The subject of such a compound nominal predicate is generally expressed either

1) by another Infinitive

To see her is to admire her.

2) by a noun denoting an action, a state or some vague idea:

My	wish habit duty intention advice hobby principle difficulty hope	is was will be	to do something. to have a cold shower. to do the dishes. to get a job, etc. to buy a cheap house. to elect the leader, etc.
The	order problem business method plan purpose reason		
The last The next	thing		

3) by a clause
What we want to do is to see our friends.
The problem was how to find the solution.

In this function the Infinitive may be introduced by the conjunctions or conjunctive pronouns or adverbs what, whom, where, when, how which together with the Infinitive form a conjunctive Infinitive phrase:

The problem The question The thing	was is	what to do. whom (who) to look for. where to find him. when to start. how to do it.
--	-----------	---

1. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as predicative. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the subject of each sentence and say what it is expressed by.

Model: *What we want to do is to see our classmates as soon as possible.* The Infinitive phrase «to see our classmates as soon as possible» is used as a predicative of the compound nominal predicate. The subject is expressed by the clause «What we want to do».

The plan was to help her. The Infinitive phrase «to help her» is used as a predicative of the compound nominal predicate. The subject is expressed by the noun «The plan».

1. The plan was to test the new equipment and discuss the results. 2. My duty will be to do the shopping and cook meals. 3. Their business is to sell foodstuffs. 4. Her method is to make a child think and find his own solution. 5. The next thing is to find an experienced nurse. 6. The problem was who to turn to for advice. 7. What I must do is to have my Volvo fixed as soon as possible. 8. The order was to pursue the man and catch him immediately. 9. Her habit is to put five lumps of sugar in her tea. 10. My brother's principle is to do everything himself and never ask for anyone's help. 11. Their purpose was to find a hotel and stay there. 12. Our first thought was to leave the place as quickly as possible until we were caught in a storm. 13. Kelly's only chance was to give evidence against Julian. 14. Man's true vocation is to cultivate the ground. 15. My only concern was to get home after a hard day's work. 16. The question was how to find their house.

2. Complete the sentences using the conjunctive words **what, whom, where, how** before an Infinitive and an Infinitive phrase used as predicative.

Model: *The problem was ... – The problem was when to finish the test.*

whom to give the money to.

where to take her.

how to get there.

what to have for breakfast.

1. The task is ... 2. The question was ... 3. Our problem will be ... 4. The students' difficulty is ...
5. Everyone's goal is ... 6. All parents' problem is ... 7. Ann's question was ... 8. My sister's dream is ... 9. The trouble with you is ... 10. His aim is ...

3. Make up your own sentence according to the model using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as predicative.

Model : *What I want to do is to visit my relatives abroad.*

What they really wanted to do was to get married and be happy.

What I must do is to hand the message to her.

What he had to do was to meet her at the station.

What she failed to do was to pass her driving test.

4. Use the infinitives given below as predicatives:

to visit, to encourage, to tell, to keep, to try, to go on, to return, to be- come, to bake, to check, to ask, to offend, to take.

1. My plan for this weekend is ... one of my delicious apple pies. 2. My advice to you is ... a coach tour. 3. My next plan for the holiday is ... Europe. 4. The only thing that could do you best is ... a long rest. 5. His life's ambition was ... an economist. 6. His duty was ... us some questions on the matter. 7. The last thing I meant was ... you. 8. The only thing she could do was ... the truth. 9. My next plan was ... to the house avoiding Wells if possible. 10. My greatest thing is ... our heads up. 11. My suggestion for you is ... the answers on your own. 12. But for the present the best thing to do was ... him in his studies. 13. There was no water nearby and the only thing was ... to find it somewhere.

5. Use the infinitive as predicative to complete the sentences.

1. Our plan was 2. To act like this meant 3. The first thing he did was 4. The main problem was 5. Our next step must be 6. What I want is 7. Our only chance to see him is 8. To ask him a straight question means 9. Your next task is 10. My advice to her was 11. My only wish is 12. What she wants now is 13. My proposal is 14. Her aim is 15. What I have come for is

6. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as predicative.

1. Єдине, що можна зробити, це вирушити до моря. 2. Сказати йому правду означає знайти в ньому ворога. 3. Їхній обов'язок полягає в тому, щоб доглядати за будинком. 4. Головна проблема в їхньому житті - де заробити гроші. 5. Моя порада - забути його якомога швидше. 6. Наказ полковника був просуватися вперед і атакувати противника. 7. Наш план полягав у тому, щоб розшукати його батька. 8. його хобі - збирати старовинні монети та етикетки. 9. Питання в тому, як дістатися до вілли. 10. Головне було змусити його визнати свою провину. 11. Найкраще, що ти зараз можеш зробити, - це вибачитися перед ним. 12. Наш план полягав у тому, щоб закінчити будівництво будинку до настання дощової погоди. 13. Моя мета - стати хорошим фахівцем у цій галузі. 14. Перше, що я хочу зробити - це добре відпочити. 15. Завдання було в тому, щоб дістатися до місця до світанку. 16. Усе, що їй вдалося зробити - це дізнатися номер їхнього телефону. 17. Єдине, що я зараз хочу - це щоб мене не турбували. 18. Мій план полягав у тому, щоб переїхати з

Шотландії. 19. Користуватися телефоном для довідок - це економити час. 20. Єдине, що йому хотілося зробити - це знайти місце, де можна було б зупинитися на ніч. 21. Наступний пункт мого плану на літо полягає в тому, щоб з'їздити в Іспанію на 2 тижні. 22. Перше, що необхідно було зробити - це порадитися з лікарем. 23. Тепер нам залишається тільки надіслати оголошення в газету. 24. Мій план на вихідні полягає в тому, щоб сходити до театру і подивитися виставу, про яку багато говорять. 25. Обов'язок кожної людини – берегти природу.

The Infinitive as part of a predicative

When the Infinitive forms part of a predicative the other part may be expressed by an adjective.

She is never easy to find.

The question was difficult to answer.

The man is hard to deal with.

The question was difficult to answer.

The man	is	hard	to please.
The rule	was	difficult	to deal with.
This car		easy	to teach.
			to remember.
			to drive.

1. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as part of a predicative. Say what the first part of the predicative is expressed by.

Model: *His wife is **hard** to please.* The Infinitive is used as part of a predicative. The first part is expressed by the adjective «hard».

1. Sociable people are easy to deal with. 2. Sandy is pleasant to talk to. 3. This armchair is very comfortable to sit in. 4. The story was amusing to listen to. 5. His advice was hard to follow. 6. Responsible people are easy to rely upon. 7. The cottage is quite convenient to live in. 8. Stubborn people are usually difficult to persuade. 9. Her phone number was impossible to remember.

2. Paraphrase the sentences from **exercise 1** with an Infinitive used as part of a predicative into sentences with an Infinitive as subject. Note the difference between the structures and the way of rendering them in Ukrainian.

Model: *Sociable people are easy to deal with.*

a) *It's easy to deal with sociable people.*

b) *To deal with sociable people is easy.*

3. Change the sentences according to the model.

Model: It is interesting to meet new people.

– New people are interesting to meet.

1. It is simple to solve this problem. 2. It is always funny to listen to him. 3. It is expensive to buy a mink coat. 4. It is difficult to speak to such people. It was difficult to start an engine in such cold weather. 6. It is dangerous to stand on this ladder. 7. It is simple to communicate with people due to In- ternet. 8. It was unpleasant to watch their quarrel. 9. It is impossible to get a good dinner in our canteen. 10. It is rather difficult to deal with stubborn peo- ple. 11. It is dangerous to drive a car in big cities. 12. It is difficult to translate the article. 13. It is easy to make this cake. 14. It is easy to teach him.

4. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Її дітям важко догодити. 2. Його вірші легко вчити напам'ять. 3. Ці громіздкі формули неможливо запам'ятати. 4. Такі яблука важко виростити. 5. Цю сцену було неприємно

спостерігати. 6. Його слова важко було запам'ятати. 7. Твою розповідь смішно слухати. 8. з моєю дочкою важко сперечатися. 9. Їхнього візиту неможливо уникнути. 10. На неї завжди приємно дивитися.

THE INFINITIVE AS PART OF A COMPOUND VERBAL PREDICATE

In this function the Infinitive occurs in three types of a compound verbal predicate:

- 1) the compound verbal modal predicate;
- 2) the compound verbal phasal predicate;
- 3) the compound verbal predicate of double orientation.

I. As part of a **compound verbal modal predicate** the Infinitive follows a **modal verb** (the first part of this predicate) and denotes the action which may be possible, obligatory, desirable, etc. as indicated by the modal verb.

*I **don't have to** work on Sunday.*

*Passengers **must show** their tickets to the conductor.*

*You aren't well. Perhaps you **should see** a doctor*

*You **ought to have warned** her*

II. As part of a **compound verbal phasal predicate** the Infinitive follows a **phasal verb**, that is a verb that denotes the beginning, the duration, the repetition or the end of the action expressed by the Infinitive (**to begin, to start, to come, to cease, to continue, used to, would**, etc.)

*People **started to leave** the theatre long before the end of the play.*

*We soon **came to realize** that all was in vain. Мы скоро начали понимать, что все напрасно.*

*It soon **began to snow** heavily.*

*They gradually **ceased to talk** and fell asleep*

*It **continued to rain** the whole day.*

*He **used to meet** her outside the Stores.*

*Before leaving the country Mr. Smith **would telephone** to his wife.*

Note: The Infinitive after the verb **to stop** expresses purpose and indicates that the action will follow another. In this case the verb **to stop** has the meaning «to make a break», «to pause in order to do something».

*He **stopped to talk** to me about our plans. = He stopped in order to talk to me...*

*He **stopped to light** a cigarette. = He stopped so as to light a cigarette.*

III. As part of a **compound predicate of double orientation** the Infinitive follows the part of the predicate which may be expressed by six groups of verbs and phrases: (among them 4 groups of verbs are used in the passive voice):

1. Seem, appear (казаться) prove, turn out (оказаться) happen, chance (случиться)

*You **seem to have been mistaken**.*

*He was a bachelor, who **seemed to avoid** women.*

*The examiner **appears to be satisfied** with your answer.*

*There **appears to be** a misunderstanding.*

*I **happen to know** you are wrong.*

*They **proved to be** experts in this field.*

Note: The Infinitive of the verb **to be** as a link verb may be omitted: *He **seems to be** ill = He **seems** ill.*

2. The passive voice of the verbs of sense perception: to hear, to see, etc.

*Soon he **was heard to start** the engine of his car.*

*She **was never seen to speak** to him again.*

*He **was never heard to say** «thank you» in his life.*

Note: The Infinitive is not used after passive forms of **watch** and **notice**.

3. The passive voice of the verbs of mental activity: to think, to know, to expect, to believe, to suppose, to consider, etc.

*The delegation **is supposed to be arriving** at the station now.*

*Our yachtsman **is known to have been travelling** round the world for half a year already.*

*The fire **is believed to have started** last night.*

*After the verbs **to believe, to expect** the non-perfect Infinitive denotes an action referring to the future.*

*This actor **is believed** to take part in the new performance.*

*A new law **is expected** to be introduced next year.*

*4. The passive voice of the verbs of saying: **to say, to report, to announce, etc.***

*He **is said** to know everything and everybody.*

*The plane **was announced** to be landing.*

*The goods **are reported** to have been stored in the warehouse.*

*5. The passive voice of the verb **to make** (it is followed by a to-Infinitive).*

*He **was made** to speak and say everything.*

*6. The phrases **to be likely, to be unlikely, to be sure, to be certain**. Here the adjectives are an indication of the speaker's attitude towards the future. After all these phrases the Infinitive denotes an action referring to the future thus only a non-perfect Infinitive is possible.*

*She **is likely** to come today. = It's likely that she will come today. = She will probably come today.*

***Are you likely** to be home late? = Is it likely that you will be late home?*

*Manchester **are sure** to win; the other team haven't got a chance.*

1. Underline the Infinitive used as part of a compound verbal predicate. State the type of the compound verbal predicate.

1. He can't do what you are asking him. 2. She came to realize that he had deceived her. 3. Tom and Arnold were heard to come in but soon they went out laughing. 4. Sam had to meet his wife at the port and take her straight to her parents. 5. You needn't go to the launderette round the corner. You can do the laundry at home. 6. A strange passenger was seen to follow the conductor. 7. Hardly had it ceased to rain when we went out. 8. Jeff has a sore throat. He shouldn't have had too much ice-cream. 9. A good beginning is said to make all the battle. 10. You might have helped your little sister to carry her bag. 11. Could you possibly tell me where I can get the information about trains? 12. Though little Andy desperately resisted he was made to take the bitter pill. 13. He loved jazz music so much that he would go to the jazz club every weekend. 14. They continued to check the calculations as they didn't find the results satisfactory. 15. Grandma must be watering the flowers. 16. He began to telephone her every hour but couldn't reach her. 17. Mr. Jackson used to smoke dozens of cigarettes a day and nobody expected that he would give up smoking. 18. Don't worry! Sally is sure to come and bring you some food. 19. Our friends are expected to arrive at Heathrow. 20. With the development of civilization man's interference into nature began to increase.

2. Underline the infinitive used as part of a compound verbal predicate. State the type of the compound verbal predicate: a) modal; b) phrasal.

1. When I was young I could climb any tree in the forest. 2. She came to realize that he had deceived her. 3. They shouldn't allow parking here; the street is too narrow. 4. Sam had to meet his wife at the port and take her straight to her parents'. 5. You needn't go to the launderette round the corner. You can do the laundry at home. 6. It continued to rain all day. 7. Hardly had it ceased to rain when we went out. 8. Jeff has a sore throat. He shouldn't have had too much ice-cream. 9. He used to phone his parents once a month. 10. You might have helped your little sister to carry her bag. 11. You ought to have warned them. 12. He loved jazz music so much that he would go to the jazz club every weekend. 13. They continued to check the calculations as they didn't find the results satisfactory. 14. Grandma must be watering the flowers. 15. He began to telephone her every hour but couldn't reach her. 16. Mr. Jackson used to smoke dozens of cigarettes a day and nobody expected that he would give up smoking.

3. Use an Infinitive as part of a compound verbal predicate in a proper context.

Model 1: Part of a compound verbal modal predicate. *That early! You will have to wait. She **may appear** any time.*

Model 2: Part of a compound verbal phrasal predicate. *Nancy **used to be seen** in their company but now she doesn't go out at all. She **may feel** lonely.*

Model 3: Part of a compound verbal predicate of double orientation. *Margaret **happened to find** his diary and it's wise of her not to show it to anybody.*

Make use of the following:

You He We They	could must may/might ought to should/-not are to have to needn't, etc.	do it yourself. be eating now. explain it to her. buy a new sports jacket. be coached in Grammar. cut lectures. discuss it with her. be made at the tailor's.
It Ann	began started used continued finished ceased	to operate on him. to wind the tape back. to teach English. to dance to the music. to learn Polish. to lose her eyesight.
Jane Sam	is said was known, etc.	to have graduated from the University. to have lived a happy life.
The weather	proved happened turned out appeared	to be changing for the better. to have been waiting for the taxi since 6 o'clock. to last long. to get the tickets for the 5 o'clock train.
Our friend(s)	is likely are unlikely is certain is sure	to go by plane. to be staged at one of the best theatres. to fail in English. to phone us as soon as he arrives.

4. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an Infinitive as part of a compound verbal predicate.

Model: *It's likely that she will keep us company. (to be likely) – She **is likely to keep** us company.*

*They saw the man open the door. (to see) – He **was seen to open** the door.*

*Perhaps she will come. (may) – She **may come**.*

1. There's no necessity for them to come over and bring their son. (need) 2. I would recommend you to have a talk with your boss about it. (should) 3. When she worked for that big company her job often took her abroad. (used to) 4. Maybe Maria will let us borrow some money from Dick. (may) 5. They saw that Brian dialed the number but they didn't hear him talk to anybody. (hear) 6. I bumped into Roy near «Marks and Spencer», and we had a nice chat. (happen) 7. Probably, they found the show rather dull. (must) 8. We were told he had got the driving license. (say) 9. It seems to me that you are lying or are you kidding? (seem) 10. I didn't expect that Dan would make a call to the publisher. (expect) 11. When her sister returned they started playing chess. (start).

5. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Тобі не слід було бути відвертою з ним, він ніколи не вмів зберігати чужі таємниці. 2. Можливо, у нього якась справа в нашому місті і він приїхав сюди на кілька днів. 3. Знову пішов дощ. Доведеться сидіти весь день вдома. Шкода, ми могли б непогано провести день за містом. 4. Перед відходом з роботи містер Сміт зазвичай телефонував дружині. 5. Мені не довелося їй нічого пояснювати. вона все вже знала. 6. Ліззі продовжувала благодіяти сестру не говорити матері про їхній прихід. Мати могла її покарати. 7. Навряд чи вони допоможуть нам. Доведеться позичити гроші в когось іншого, інакше ми не зможемо розплатитися з ним. 8. Поступово вони перестали розмовляти і заснули. 9. Публіка стала йти з театру задовго до кінця вистави. 10. Вочевидь, вони чекають на вас біля входу. 11. Вам слід було б вибачитися: ви не праві. 12. Денні зазвичай сидів і годинами дивився на море. 13. Повідомили, що рейс прибуває вчасно. Твоя інформація, виявляється, неточна. 14. Даремно ти сказав їй про нашу розмову. Тепер вона перестане довіряти мені. 15. Ми, бувало, брали напрокат машину і виїжджали куди-небудь на південь. Здавалося, там ми забували про все. 16. Якщо починався дощ, ми ховалися в будиночку біля моря.

THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT

1. **The Infinitive used as an object is placed after the predicate and is often expressed by an Infinitive phrase or a single Infinitive.**

*We **plan to go** on holiday together.*

*I **regret to have invited** her.*

After the verbs **to find, to consider, to believe, to think, etc.** when used as an object, the Infinitive may be preceded by the formal introductory object **it**, which is not translated into Ukrainian.

*e.g. I **find it hard to believe** you.*

*Did you **find it necessary to invite** her?*

*I **found it easy to get** that job.*

*e.g. I **found it easy to get** that job.*

2. **The infinitive may be either the only object of the verb or one of two objects after the following verbs:**

a) **Verbs that take only one object: to agree, to arrange, to attempt, to care, to like, to choose, to claim, to consent, to decide, to deserve, to determine, to expect, to fail, to fear, to forget, to hesitate, to hope, to intend, to learn, to like, to long, to love, to manage, to mean, to neglect, to plan, to omit, to prefer, to pretend, to refuse, to regret, to remember, to swear, to tend, etc.**

*e.g. We **agreed to have** a deal.*

*He **asked to come** with us.*

*He **chose to pay no attention** to what she said.*

Many of these verbs can be used with the passive infinitive:

*e. g. She **refused to be deceived**.*

*He **deserves to be promoted**.*

*I **expect to be promptly informed** of all the changes to the original plan.*

The verbs claim and pretend are quite often used with the perfect infinitive:

*He **claimed to have been there**.*

*He **pretended to have heard nothing**.*

b) **Verbs that take two objects** (the first of which is a noun or a pronoun and the second one is the infinitive): **to advise, to allow, to ask, to beg, to cause, to command, to compel, to direct, to encourage, to forbid, to force, to have, to impel, to implore, to induce, to instruct, to invite, to leave, to let, to make to order, to permit, to persuade, to recommend, to request, to require, to tell, to urge, etc.**

*e.g. Tell **him to phone** me.*

*I asked **her to explain** everything.*

*My mum taught **me to read and write**.*

After the verbs to advise, to ask, to decide, to discover, to discuss, to explain, to find out, to forget, to know, to learn, to remember, to show, to teach, to tell, to understand, to want, to wonder, etc., the

object may be expressed by a conjunctive Infinitive phrase.

e.g. I don't know what to say; where to go; who to meet; how much to pay; when to come.

We were wondering where to put our bags.

Have you decided when to have the party?

We were discussing how long to stay in the country.

3. The Infinitive may also be used as an object after some a) predicative adjectives (*anxious, glad, grateful, thankful, happy, proud, sorry*), b) statives (*afraid, ashamed*), c) Participles (*astonished, amused, determined, delighted, horrified, pleased, surprised, etc.*)

4. Some verbs are followed either by an Infinitive-object or by a gerund-object. They are: **to remember, to forget, to regret.** The difference concerns mainly non-perfect forms and is connected with time: the gerund-object refers to things that happened earlier (before remembering, forgetting or regretting took place); the Infinitive object refers to things that happen after remembering, forgetting or regretting.

remember + gerund	remember + Infinitive
I'll always remember <u>seeing</u> you at the races.	Please, remember <u>to post</u> my letter.
remember + a gerund = remember what one has done, what has happened.	remember + an Infinitive = remember what one has to do.
forget + gerund	forget + Infinitive
I'll never forget <u>swimming</u> in the Dead Sea.	Don't forget <u>to post</u> my letter, please.
forget + a gerund = forget what one has done or what has happened.	forget + an Infinitive = forget what one has to do.
regret + gerund	regret + Infinitive
I don't regret <u>telling</u> her the truth though it upset her.	I regret <u>to inform</u> you that we can't offer you this job.
regret + a gerund = be sorry for what has happened.	regret + an Infinitive = be sorry for what one is going to say.

The verb **to like** can also be followed by an Infinitive-object and a gerund-object with some difference in meaning:

like + gerund	like + Infinitive
I like <u>dancing</u> .	I like <u>to sleep</u> with the window open.
like + a gerund = enjoy	like + an Infinitive = to be in the habit of, think it right to

1. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as object. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I would strongly advise you not to speak to him like that. 2. Michael was asked to leave Bristol immediately. 3. The doctor compelled the patient to change his diet. 4. Ellen's friends encouraged her to get a new car. 5. I consider it impossible to change your plans. 6. He was trying to persuade her but failed. 7. We'd strongly recommend you to see this film. 8. I find it impossible to take the responsibility upon myself. 9. I told Lizzy not to run round the flower-bed and not to pick the flowers. 10. She taught me to feel and admire nature. 11. I'm extremely sorry to disturb you, my dear. 12. She tried to insist on coming with me, but I finally managed to talk

her out of it. 13. I thought it impolite to smoke a cigar in her presence. 14. He never said a word about what he feared or hoped, or planned to do.

2. a) Use the infinitives given below as objects:

to post, to show, to air, to see off, to join, to give, to switch off, to be, to go out, to lock, to give a lift, to retire, to play chess, to begin.

1. I must tell Helen ... the drawing room very well.
2. He promised ... us all of the island.
3. How did you learn ...? – I began ... when I was young and I've been ... ever since.
4. He claims ... an expert on the subject.
5. He decided ... when he reached the age of 60.
6. Don't forget ... the light, when you go out of the room.
7. Oh, no! I completely forgot ... the safe!
8. I propose ... early.
9. I'm sorry I forgot ... your letter.
10. Mike offered ... me ... home, but I refused.
11. He asked me ... his party.
12. I was so afraid ... at night that I asked my cousin to accompany me.
13. He promised ... his son a bicycle as a birthday present.
14. Philip was not sorry ... him

b) Complete the following using the infinitives as objects.

1. He asked ...
2. I'm so glad
3. We are awfully sorry
4. The doctor advised
5. The child is afraid
6. Everybody promised
7. Would you like ...?
8. Who has allowed you ...?
9. I've decided
10. Sorry I've forgotten
11. Frank is lucky
12. Paul was amused
13. The writer was happy
14. Nobody told her
15. There is a couple of things I want... .16. Has your mother persuaded you ...?

3. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as object.

1. Вибач, я забув надіслати твій лист.
2. Я пропоную забути про це.
3. Він обіцяв повернутися в неділю.
4. Вони постійно забувають вимикати світло.
5. Він зробив вигляд, що не впізнав нас.
6. Він боявся забути про свою обіцянку.
7. Ви не забули вимкнути телевізор?
8. Я дуже хочу поговорити з ними.
9. Вони сподівалися знайти Тома в басейні, але його там не було.
10. Він запросив своїх друзів прийти й подивитися його нову квартиру.
11. Я вирішив поїхати на море разом із батьками.
12. Я зробив вигляд, ніби не помітив його збентеження, і продовжував говорити.
13. Вони вирішили ніколи про це більше не згадувати.
14. Мені було прикро, що я забув подякувати їм.
15. Де ви навчилися так добре говорити англійською?
16. Думаю, вельми бажано час від часу писати їм.
7. вони попросили мене не зупинятися на подробицях.
8. Спробуй переконати її не вступати до аспірантури цього року.

4. Paraphrase the following sentences. Use an Infinitive object.

Model: *I think you should do it as soon as possible. I advise you to do it as soon as possible.*

Use: to plan; to allow; to promise; to compel; to recommend; to encourage; to request; to order; to teach; to persuade; to advise

1. I think you should read as much as possible as that may help you to enrich your vocabulary.
2. I wanted to continue the experiment but the boss said it was high time to stop it.
3. His recommendation was that we should go to Stratford on Avon and visit Shakespeare's birthplace.
4. At first I'll pack for the trip and then I'm going to take a taxi and go to the airport.
5. Father told Jimmy that he would buy him a new bike.
6. «You should continue to do as much swimming as possible. This way you may lose weight», said Sarah to Kate.
7. They were very polite when they asked whether we could take off our shoes before entering the room.
8. We were given permission to use their phone and make a call to the Embassy.
9. He is the sort of man you could cause to do just anything.
10. The captain made up his mind to punish the soldier and he told him to peel a bucket of potatoes.
11. He showed me how to drive a car on the motorway.

5. Complete the sentences using a conjunctive Infinitive phrase as an object.

Model: *He always knows ... (who) – He always knows who to invite to his party.*

1. She never asks me ... (whether) 2. The teachers decided ... (when) 3. I absolutely forgot ... (how) 4. Peter can't understand ... (where) 5. The receptionist told the tourist ... (how much) 6. We can't remember ... (who) 7. They couldn't decide ... (how long) 8. My brother explained to me ... (what) 9. The taxi-driver advised her ... (where) 10. I want to know ... (whether) 11. I don't understand ... (which) 12. Nobody told her ... (who)

6. Complete the sentences using an Infinitive as an object after predicative adjectives, statives or Participles. Use different forms of the Infinitive.

Model: *I was anxious ... I was **anxious to see** her as I missed her.*

1. My colleagues were astonished ... 2. Her family were determined ... 3. The jury were proud ... 4. I am sorry ... 5. The writer was happy ... 6. They were horrified ... 7. We were grateful ... 8. I am delighted ... 9. My husband and I were pleased ... 10. The girl was ashamed and afraid ... 11. Our friends are glad ... 12. Frank is lucky ... 13. Jane is afraid ... 14. Paul was amused ... 15. Who was surprised ...? 16. Why was John so determined ...?

7. Complete the sentences. Use two objects, one of them being expressed by a conjunctive Infinitive with *who, what, which, where, how, when*.

Model: *You should advise ... (to turn to) – You should advise me **who to turn to**.*

1. They told ... (wine to buy) 2. We asked ... (to turn to the right) 3. Can you advise ... (to buy) 4. He showed ... (to ride a bicycle) 5. The teacher taught ... (to pronounce English vowels) 6. We informed ... (to stop on the way) 7. He taught ... (to repair my car) 8. The shop-assistant advised ... (to use the detergent) 9. The manager reminded ... (to come to the meeting) 10. The teacher showed ... (to write letters) 11. They informed ... (to come)

8. Make up sentences with an Infinitive or a gerund as an object after the verbs: **to remember; to forget; to like; to stop; to regret. Note the difference in the meaning.**

9. Translate the sentences into English using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as an object.

1. Думаю, вельми бажано час від часу писати їм. 2. Вони попросили мене не зупинятися на подробицях. 3. Спробуй переконати її не вступати до аспірантури цього року. 4. Я б настійно радив Вам побувати на цьому ярмарку. 5. Старша сестра навчила її грати цей концерт. 6. Він вважав за необхідне повідомити їм про переговори заздалегідь. 7. Не забудь віднести костюм у хімчистку! (dry cleaner's) 8. Він із жалем повідомив їм, що приїхати не може. 9. Мені подобається відпочивати в селі. Щоліта я намагаюся їздити туди. 10. Не забувай приймати душ перед сном. 11. Я поцікавився, чи робити розрахунки, чи почекати кінця випробувань. 12. Не пам'ятаю, як пекти цей пиріг і скільки тримати його в духовці. 13. Запитай її, куди піти насамперед, у Національну галерею чи в Британський музей. 14. Вона пояснила мені, що треба повторювати до іспиту. Тепер я уявляю собі, як треба готуватися. 15. Мати пишалася, що в неї такий сміливий син. 16. Вибачте, що перериваю Вас. 17. Нам приємно приймати таких чудових гостей у нашому домі.

THE INFINITIVE AS ATTRIBUTE

As an attribute both the active and the passive infinitives are possible. If the subject of the sentence denotes the person who has to do the action expressed by the infinitive-attribute, the attribute is expressed by an active infinitive.

e.g. *I have **a friend to rely upon**.*

As an attribute the infinitive can modify:

a) both abstract and concrete nouns

e.g. *I have **an excuse to do**.*

b) the noun-substitute *one*

e.g. *He is the one to be trusted.*

c) compound indefinite and universal pronouns in *-body, -thing, -one*

e.g. We had nothing to lose.

d) ordinal numerals (especially *the first*)

e.g. *Bob is always the last to come to the lesson and the first to leave.*

e) substantivised adjectives *next, last, much, little, more, enough*.

e.g. *I've got no more to add.*

The infinitive-attribute may be expressed by a conjunctive infinitive phrase.

I have no idea	who	to	address.
	what	to	do.
	where	to	go.
	how	to	find the answer.
	when	to	start.
	whether	to	go there or not.

e.g. *I have no idea who to address.*

I have no idea how to find the answer.

1. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as an attribute and the word modified. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. She is the right woman to marry. 2. Laura was the last to arrive though nobody expected her to come. 3. We have got no wish to support them as they are not the people to be trusted. 4. You'd better find somebody to walk your dog. 5. Brian is not a person to act rapidly. 6. I've got so much to tell you. 7. It is not a question to be discussed now. 8. Tom has nobody to pick him up at the station. 9. This is just the time to pay them a return visit. 10. The man made me a sign to approach him and help him with the load. 11. Nobody wanted to be the first to speak and sound foolish. 12. There is something to be done before we leave. 13. We have very little to give you. You'd better find another family to take care of you. 14. Offer Sam this job. He is the one to rely upon. 15. The next thing to do is to go to the Embassy and get a visa. 16. His lecture leaves much to be desired. 17. We've got nothing to lose but our pride. 18. He was constantly thinking of the things to say to her. 19. His inability to impose his will on them made him feel unimportant. 20. There remains nothing more to be done.

2. Match the two corresponding parts of the sentences:

I have no spoon

to write with.

I have no knife

to write with on the blackboard.

I have no pen

to eat with.

I have no pencil

to cut with.

I have no chalk

to make fire with.

I have no matches

to draw with.

I have no friend

to go to.

I have no place

to talk to.

I have no relatives

to live in.

I have no parents

to love.

I have no husband/wife

to help me.

She has a lot of toys

to travel with.

She has a lot of things

to go skiing with.

She has a lot of plans	to play with.
She has a lot of friends	to dream of.
There are a lot of nice pictures	to read.
There are a lot of books	to choose from.
There are a lot of offers	to try on.
There are a lot of hats	to enjoy.
It's a good thing	to admire.
It's a good place	to dream of.
It's a good offer	to go to.
That's a person	to do.
He's a friend	to turn to.

3. Paraphrase the sentences using a passive Infinitive as attribute.

Model: *A lot of things should be done before we leave. – There are a lot of things to be done before we leave.*

Note that an Active Infinitive is also possible in this case. *There are a lot of things to do before we leave.*

1. A lot of papers should be typed before the boss comes. 2. Some problems should be solved before we sign an agreement. 3. A couple of chairs should be fetched. 4. A lot of things should be packed before he arrives. 5. Three students should be asked at the seminar. 6. Three tapes should be listened to before we start a class. 7. Lots of rules should be revised before we have a test. 8. Five children should be examined by a doctor. 9. A lot of pictures should be looked through before we find the one we need. 10. Two more people should be invited. 11. Several more calls should be given before we arrange everything.

4. Make up a sentence using an Infinitive as attribute.

1.	I have He has We've got	a right an aim an idea a purpose a wish	to disturb you. to know the truth. to do so. to vote. to get the post.
	I have She had	no purpose no inclination no wish no right no time	to hurt you. to trust you. to judge them. to waste the money. to accuse him.
	We know of her his their	wish idea	to tell them the truth. to write a novel. to think about it. to go on business to Paris.
			to buy a cottage. to go to university. to move in. to get married. to fix the wheel.
2.	There's (always) There must be	a temptation a way no way	to judge somebody. to buy (something) to gossip.

	There will be	something nothing somebody nobody	to solve the problem. to talk with/about. to phone. to drink. to hide. to fight for.
--	---------------	--	---

3.	I need I want I'd like to have	a place a book a friend a newspaper a man a family a child a dog	to read (on the train/plane). to talk to. to live in. to rely upon. to defend me. to take care of. to look after. to love.
4.	Ann Sindy	is was (always)	the first the second the only one the last to speak at the seminar. to be given help. to get dressed. to give me a lift. to leave. to carry a heavy bag for me. to be noticed. to win the game. to unpack his luggage.

4. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as attribute. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: *They didn't want to attend his lecture. (wish) – They had no **wish** to attend his lecture.*

1. It was impossible to book a ticket in advance. (possibility)
2. I can't remember whether you promised to lend him some money. (promise)
3. The group was allowed to visit the Memorial flat. (permission)
4. The manager's requirement was that we should check the results immediately and we had to obey. (requirement)
5. She desired to adopt the child and nothing could make her refuse to do it. (desire)
6. The guests arrived one after another. Mrs. Andrew was the first one. Then the Lemons appeared. Mr. Socks was the last one as usual. The only man who didn't arrive in time was Martin. (the first, the next ...)
7. The matter was that he didn't know what to start with. (idea)
8. You can't argue with Dick. You should just obey him without any questions. (person)
9. There are so many other things I should do before my wife comes back. (things)
10. The child was told to recite a very long and dull poem and he refused to do it. (wish)
11. We were short of time and couldn't go to see them off. (time)

5. a) Paraphrase the following so as to use the infinitives as attributes.

Part A

1. There was nothing that might keep him at home that night, and he gladly accepted the invitation.
2. This is a mineral that can be found only in this part of the country.
3. There are so many letters that must be answered.

4. She had no one in whom she could confide. 5. Can you entrust the work to anyone? 6. Here's the list of medicines which are not to be sold without a prescription. 7. He's a man one can trust. 8. We didn't know the way to the station and there wasn't anyone who we could ask. 9. It isn't a thing you can joke about. It's a serious matter. 10. He'll always find something that makes him laugh at. 11. They decided that it was a nice little town where they could live quietly for a while. 12. He's not a man who you can easily frighten. 13. There's nothing we might discuss now. Everything is settled. 14. He was the first man who guessed what George was driving at. 15. No doubt it was the best time when he could find them all at home. 16. He gave me a passage which I was to look through. 17. The next patient who was examined was my brother.

Part B

1. He is the only one among us who gave up smoking. 2. I was the first who noticed the mistake. 3. She was the first who broke the silence. 4. I am the next who will be interviewed. 5. Jane was the second who got an excellent mark. 6. He complained that he was always the last who was informed. 7. I wonder who spoke at the meeting first. 8. Who was the last person who spoke at the meeting first. 8. Who was the last person who saw the man alive? 9. He found that he was the only one who realized the danger. 10. His horse came in the race the last. 11. John was the only one who jumped with a parachute. 12. Andrew was the third who went in for the interview. 13. Paul was the last who greeted him. 14. They were the first people who arrived at the scene of the accident.

b) Complete the following using the infinitives as attributes.

1. He was always the first 2. We have nothing 3. This is the chance 4. He isn't a man 5. She made an attempt 6. Is there anybody ...? 7. He always finds something 8. This is the information 9. He spoke of his wish 10. You see I have no time 11. He resisted the temptation 12. He regretted his inability 13. Again she was the last 14. I have a right

6. Paraphrase the sentences using a noun instead of the verb in bold type with the infinitive as attribute. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: I don't **want** to change my mind. – I have no desire to change my mind.

1. We were surprised that he **refused** to go there. 2. I can't remember whether you **promised** to lend him some money. 3. The trainer **instructed** the cyclists to examine their bicycles before the competition. 4. The manager **required** that we should check the results immediately and we had to obey. 5. I told him that I was firmly **determined** to find out the truth. 6. She **desired** to adopt the child and nothing could make her refuse to do it. 7. He **consented** to fill up the vacancy. 8. We didn't know that they **planned** to leave soon. 9. They didn't **want** to attend his lecture. 10. They **demand** to be regularly informed, and you'll have to comply with it. 11. The group was **allowed** to visit the Memorial flat. 12. They repeatedly **attempted** to stage the experiment. 13. I don't **intend** to do anything about it. 14. The matter was that he **didn't know** what to start with. 15. He **offered** to give us a lift but we refused. 16. He was **permitted** to leave the house.

7. Paraphrase the following sentences in such a way as to use an Infinitive-attribute.

Model: *We must do several things today.* – *There are several things to do today.* or *We have several things to do today.*

1. Ted has a lot of problems which he must solve as soon as possible. Ted has a lot of problems ... 2. Jane hasn't got anybody who she could turn to. Jane hasn't got anybody ... 3. There was a gentleman who I could give the letter to. There was a gentleman ... 4. I can't rely on him. – He isn't a person ... 5. I had some friends who I could rely on. I had some friends ... 6. John is always complaining of something. John has always something ... 7. I had several people who(m) I wanted to visit. I had several people ... 8. There was only one man Fred could ask for

help. There was only one person ... 9. We must read two books by this author. There are two books ... 10. We have no money with which we can start business. We have no money ...

8. Complete the sentences using a conjunctive Infinitive phrase as attribute.

Model: *She has no idea ... (what). She has no idea what to say.*

1. Leo had an idea ... (how). 2. Little children have no idea ... (what). 3. His suggestion ... (where) was approved of by everybody. 4. Dad always gives me advice ... (what). 5. This is the station ... (where). 6. Could you give me an idea ... (whom). 7. We badly need the information ... (when).

9. Paraphrase the following sentences. Use an Infinitive-attribute after *the first, the second, the next, the last, the only, the oldest, the most famous, etc.*

Model: *New Zealand was the first country which gave women the vote. – New Zealand was the first to give women the vote.*

1. Who was the last person who saw the young man alive? 2. Who was the first person who found the man? 3. The first ambulance which arrived at the scene of accident was that one. 4. The ambulance was the only one which arrived at the scene in no time. 5. He is the most famous actor who took part in the performance. 6. Tretyak was the most famous goalkeeper who played in Russian team. 7. They were the first people who arrived at the scene of accident. 8. They offered their help. No one else did. – They were the only people ... 9. My friend got a pay rise. No one else did. – My friend was the only one ... 10. The captain left the ship after everyone else had. – The captain was the last ... 11. Mrs. Thatcher was the Prime Minister. No other woman in Great Britain had been Prime Minister before. – Mrs. Thatcher was the only woman ... 12. First I took the examination and then Paul did. 13. Who was the oldest astronaut who flew into space? 14. No newspaper appeared that day, only The Times. – The Times was the only newspaper ... 15. My little sister swam a length of the pool. No other girl as young as she did it. – My little sister was the only girl ... 16. Who has a pen or a pencil to spare? I need something I could write with. 17. I have brought you a book which you can read now, but be sure and return it by Saturday. 18. Soon we found that there was another complicated problem that we were to consider. 19. The girl was quite young when both her parents died and she remained alone with two younger brothers whom she had to take care of. 20. The boy had many toys which he could play with. 21. I have no books which I can read. 22. Is there anybody who will help you with your spelling? 23. Don't forget that she has a baby which she must take care of. 24. Have you got anything that you want to say on this subject? 25. There was nothing that he could do except go home. 26. I have only a few minutes in which I can explain these words to you. 27. I have an examination which I must take soon, so I can't go to the theatre with you. 28. King Lear decided to have a hundred knights who would serve him after he had divided up his kingdom. 29. Here is something which will warm you up. 30. Here is a new brush which you will clean your teeth with. 31. Here are some more facts which will prove that your theory is correct. 32. Here is something which you can rub on your hands. It will soften them. 33. Here are some screws with which you can fasten the shelves to the wall. 34. Here are some tablets which will relieve your headache. 35. Here are some articles which must be translated for tomorrow.

10. Translate the sentences into English using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as an attribute.

1. У батька завжди багато справ і в нього зовсім немає часу допомагати матері по дому. 2. Нічого не поробиш. Доведеться все розповісти їм, і мені є, що сказати цій родині. 3. Коли-небудь у тебе будуть дружина, діти, про яких тобі доведеться піклуватися. 4. У нього є хто-небудь, з ким він може поділитися своїми проблемами? 5. Намір Сенді виїхати з Кардіфа важко було зрозуміти. У неї було все для щастя. 6. Нам дали перелік

книг, які необхідно було прочитати до іспиту. 7. Його завжди запитують останнім, і він зазвичай говорить те, на що треба звернути увагу. 8. Вони цінують ваше бажання зробити їм приємність і запросити їх на пікнік. 9. Це не та людина, з якою варто мати справу. 10. Не можу приховати своє бажання вивезти Вас звідси і дати Вам можливість жити без усяких проблем і турбот. 11. Неможливо було знайти спосіб, щоб змусити його бути відвертим зі мною. 12. У її промовах не було нічого, що могло б викликати наше роздратування. 13. Я не знав нікого, хто міг би проштовхнути мою пропозицію. 14. Найкраще, що можна зробити, це залишити їх у спокої. 15. У тебе є що-небудь цікаве почитати? Тільки не пропонуй мені детектив. Це не те, що слід читати перед сном. 16. Не маю поняття, куди вступати і як готуватися до іспитів.

THE INFINITIVE AS ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

The infinitive may be used as different adverbial modifiers:

a) as an adverbial modifier of purpose

e.g. *He stopped to read a wall newspaper.*

The same idea can be expressed by using the conjunctions *in order to* and *so as*.

e.g. *We shouted in order (so as) to warn everyone of the danger.*

In negative sentences *in order not to* and *so as not to* are usually used as the infinitive alone may not be correct.

e.g. *I'm going to start now in order not to miss the beginning of the concert.*

b) as an adverbial modifier of result or consequence. It chiefly occurs after adjectives or adverbs modified by *enough* or *too*.

e.g. *You are too young to understand.*

In this function the infinitive is also used after adjectives modified by *so* (*so + adjective + as*) and nouns modified by *such* (*such + noun + as*).

e.g. *He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked. She is not such a fool as to think you innocent.*

c) as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances the infinitive denotes an action that either takes place at the same time as the action of the predicate or after it.

e.g. *He returned to the house to learn that his son had just left.*

In this function the infinitive is often found after the verb-predicate expressed by a verb of motion (*to come, to run, to rush, to leave, to return, to drive away, to get to some place, to arrive*).

e.g. *I returned from Europe to find my house in ruins.*

Besides the infinitive itself is usually expressed by the following verbs: verbs denoting discovery (*to find, to discover*), verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel*), verbs denoting a change in a state or position (*to appear, to disappear, to emerge, to die, to sink*).

e.g. *She hurried to the house only to find that it was empty. He turned to see a policeman.*

He survived the crash only to die in the desert.

In this function the infinitive is often preceded by the adverb *only*.

d) as an adverbial modifier of condition

e.g. *To hear him talk, you would think he was a celebrity. (= if you heard him talk...)*

She would be unhappy to live alone. (= if she lived alone)

e) as an adverbial modifier of time

e.g. *She was upset to hear that her sister was ill. (= She was upset when she heard...)*

I am terrified to see him. (= when I see him).

f) as an adverbial modifier of exception, the infinitive is used after the prepositions *but* or *except*. In this case only a bare infinitive is used.

e.g. *These women have nothing to do but talk.*

There was nothing to do except tell him the truth.

In this function the infinitive occurs only in negative and interrogative sentences.

e.g. *What could I do but smile?*

g) as an adverbial modifier of comparison or manner the infinitive is introduced by the conjunctions *as if, as though* or *than*.

e.g. *Her lips moved as if to warn him.*

He ran his hand through his hair as though to tidy it.

When the adverbial modifier of comparison refers to the predicate group containing adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree, the infinitive is introduced by the conjunction *than*.
 e.g. *You ought to know better than to ask questions like that.*

1. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as an adverbial modifier of purpose. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model: *We took a taxi (in order/so as) to arrive at the station in time.*

1. He came over here not to quarrel with you but just to warn you that they might do you harm.
2. To get the information you need you'd better go to the agency.
3. Sit still not to fall down.
4. To be a top student you'll have to work hard.
5. Switch off the light not to wake the baby up.
6. She paused before the front door to watch the gardener trimming the bushes.
7. Calvin opened the window to air the room.
8. We were quiet and walked slowly not to frighten them.
9. We moved into that house to look after our grandma.
10. I left a message to tell her about his call.
11. Sylvia cried loudly so as to draw the man's attention.
12. The guy stopped to light a cigarette and noticed that somebody followed him.
13. Jack looked straight into her eyes to understand whether she was lying.
14. He went into the kitchen to get himself some water.
15. Come to see us in July.
16. To cure himself of his fruitless desire he sometimes started working in the garden.

2. Paraphrase the sentences using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: *She wanted to make a living and started giving private lessons. – To make a living she started giving private lessons.*

1. Mother wanted to cook mushroom soup and for that she bought some mushrooms, carrots and onions at the greengrocer's.
2. She has to write things down and use memo magnets or she may forget something.
3. His desire was to justify himself and he persuaded her to give evidence.
4. If you do not want to lag behind the group you'll have to take all the exams before the academic year is over.
5. You should follow your boss's instructions as it can prevent your going bankrupt.
6. You will make your idea clear if you illustrate each point.
7. It's better to accept their proposal if you want to increase your income.
8. Try to show your good manners and don't be so rude, otherwise you'll seem impolite to your teacher.
9. She'd like to stay in good shape and she joined a sports club.
10. We should hurry up, or we'll miss the 5.00 train.
11. His grandmother went to the hospital as she wants to be examined by a specialist.
12. He scraped up the money as he wanted to start a restaurant.
13. If you want to mimic Cockney speech you should know it quite well.
14. The spectators wanted to pay tribute to an outstanding performance and they rose to their feet.

3. Match an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of purpose with the rest of the sentence.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. To cook cabbage soup | 1. one has to see a doctor. |
| 2. To get a job | 2. one should relax. |
| 3. To take a sick leave | 3. you should go on a diet. |
| 4. To get rid of the tension | 4. one has to be interviewed. |
| 5. To take away the pain | 5. you need cabbage, carrots and potatoes. |
| 6. To make money | 6. one should take a medicine. |
| 7. To have a tooth out | 7. you have to get a good job. |
| 8. To take off weight | 8. one has to make an appointment with a dentist. |

4. Point out the sentences which contain an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. To make a long story short, they left without saying good-bye. 2. To spend a day off in the country gives you a good chance to relax. 3. To make them laugh I had to act as a clown. 4. To respect a man you don't need to find any good qualities in him. 5. To tell the truth, I've never met such a worthy person as him. 6. To find the answer to your questions you need the encyclopedia. 7. To discuss your plan in details is absolutely necessary. 8. To grow oranges in this region one needs a hothouse. 9. To put it mildly, her father was furious. 10. Not to offend her is next to impossible as every critical remark seems to her very offensive.

5. Answer the following questions using an Infinitive to show the purpose of the action.

Model: *Why would you go to the travel agency? I'd go there to book a holiday.*

Why would you go to the butcher's? to the baker's? to the supermarket? to the box office? to the optician? to the chemist's? to the dentist? to the doctor? to the British Embassy? to a cafe? to a disco? to a concert?

Why do some people need or use these things: an alarm clock?

Model: *Some people need an alarm clock to wake them up in the morning.*

glasses; medicine; a walking stick; a hearing aid; sleeping pills; artificial sweeteners; make up; perfume; hair dye; high heeled shoes; a lipstick; a safe

Why do you think the following groups of people want/need to learn English? Use in order to/so as to ...

Model: *journalists. Journalists need English in order to interview foreigners.*

actors; pilots; diplomats; sportsmen; scientists; hotel receptionists; sailors; statesmen, civil servants; travel agents; engineers; customs officials; secretaries

6. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. Щоб розібратися в цій історії, треба вислухати кожного свідка. 2. Щоб стати хорошим лікарем, необхідна велика практика. 3. Для того, щоб із ним співпрацювати, ми маємо спочатку впевнитися в його надійності. 4. Щоб не потрапити в біду, не треба ризикувати. 5. Ми попросили наших друзів зателефонувати їй, щоб зайвий раз їй не набридати. 6. Щоб не запізнитися на нараду, довелося відкласти деякі особисті справи. 7. Для того, щоб домогтися успіху в спорті, необхідно тренуватися день і ніч. 8. Треба закупити чимало цегли, щоб побудувати такий котедж. 9. Для встановлення пам'ятника потрібен дозвіл міської адміністрації. 10. Для підтримки форми одні жінки дотримуються дієти (to stick to a diet), а інші воліють займатися спортом. 11. Щоб пізнати істину, її треба шукати. 12. Не треба бути занадто розумним, щоб зрозуміти, що вони закохані. 13. Щоб піти непоміченим, він вирішив перечекати до ночі. 14. Для того, щоб дозволити Вам зробити це, я повинен забути про всі свої принципи. 15. Щоб насолодитися природою, треба побути в якомусь тихому, відокремленому місці й ні з ким не спілкуватися.

7. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of result.

1. Her little brother is clever enough to understand what you feel. 2. Jane is too polite to insult anybody. 3. Phil and Sylvia were so kind as to support us when we were pressed for money. 4. He is not such an idiot as to marry again. He is fed up with his first marriage. 5. The house was small and cheap enough to be sold for five thousand pounds. 6. The car is too slow to cover this distance in two hours' time. 7. I was so lucky as to see the first night of his play. 8. The journey was too long to enjoy it. 9. It is too funny to be taken seriously. 10. My brother is not such a fool as to give up his job. 11. The story is too sad to be amusing. 12. Her younger son is talented enough to get the first prize. 13. The girl is too weak to carry such a heavy case.

8. Complete the sentences using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of result/consequence.

Model: *The problem is too easy ... – The problem is too easy to be discussed for hours.*

Use: to follow; to be approved of; to cross the street; to be sold; to be taken into consideration; to forgive; to be good at playing basketball; to drive at speed; to stop smb; to dance to; to move the bookcase; to marry

1. The traffic was too heavy ... 2. The book was dull enough ... 3. The circumstances are too serious ... 4. My elder brother is so tall as ... 5. The reason is serious enough ... 6. His clothes are too shabby ... 7. The engine is so powerful as ... 8. His advice is good enough ... 9. Her son is not such an unruly child as ... 10. The melody was so romantic as ... 11. Her behaviour was silly enough ... 12. Bob is too young ... 13. I am not strong enough ...

9. Paraphrase the sentences using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of result/consequence.

Model: *He is clever. He can solve any problem. – He is **clever enough** to solve any problem.*

*He is old. He can't climb the tree. – He is **too old** to climb the tree.*

*I'm not an expert in this sphere. I can't help you. – I'm not **such an expert in this sphere** to help you.*

1. The boy was silly. He couldn't but take the matches. 2. Lucy is very rude. She can offend anybody who she doesn't like. 3. Her friends are warm-hearted. They will help her willingly. 4. The flat is extremely expensive. We can't afford it. 5. Julia is wise. She can decide for herself. 6. The lecture was so dull. I didn't take any notes. 7. He is very unwell. He can't even move. 8. The armchair is comfortable. I'll buy it. 9. I'll never agree to do it. I'm not an idiot. 10. Kate is, no doubt, attractive. It's easy to fall in love with her. 11. Philip is a reliable man. You can trust him. 12. Don't keep your children indoors in this wonderful weather. Let them go for a walk. 13. He is so old that he cannot skate. 14. He is so weak that he cannot lift this weight. 15. She is so busy that she cannot talk with you. 16. She was so inattentive that she did not notice the mistake. 17. The rule was so difficult that they did not understand it. 18. He was so stupid that he did not see the joke. 19. She has got so fat that she cannot wear this dress now. 20. The accident was so terrible that I don't want to talk about it. 21. They were so empty-headed that they could not learn a single thing. 22. The window was so dirty that they could not see through it. 23. She was so foolish that she could not understand my explanation. 24. I have very little wool: it won't make a sweater. 15. The problem is so difficult that it is impossible to solve it. 16. The box is so heavy that nobody can carry it. 17. The baby is so little that it cannot walk.

10. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the Infinitive as adverbial modifier of result/consequence.

1) Він занадто шляхетний, щоб викликати підозри. 2. Діти недостатньо розумні й уважні, щоб контролювати свою поведінку. 3. Він був такий добрий, що дав мені в борг ці гроші. 4. Том занадто впертий, щоб дослухатися до твоєї поради. 5. Досить твоїх слів, щоб повірити в те, що він не винен. 6. Було надто шумно, щоб розчути слова. 7. М'яч був досить близько, щоб зловити його. 8. Його умови занадто важкі, щоб прийняти їх. 9. Вона була така мила, що погодилася вислухати нас. 10. Він не такий ідіот, щоб не усвідомлювати, що його обманюють. 11. Ви занадто сліпі, щоб відчувати, чого вона домагається від вас. 12. Його намір виглядає занадто дивно, щоб не викликати загального здивування.

11. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. He left her never to see her again. 2. Oscar left us only to realize soon that he couldn't live alone. 3. We saw him off never to hear from him. 4. She argued with her mother only to find out she was wrong. 5. They bought a new house never to live there. 6. He visited his aunt to see that

she was seriously ill. 7. I turned around just in time to see her look at her husband. 8. He returned home to find the window broken. 9. He went quickly to the bathroom, and returned to find Murphy sitting beside his bed. 10. She liked to be kind to people and used to give promises to forget them at once. 11. He went to the Middle East to die of yellow fever. 12. He turned to Kate to find her in conversation with Carol Goldsmith.

12. Join the sentences using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Use the words suggested.

Model: Ann started going in for sports without any enthusiasm. Quite of a sudden she became a master of sports. (to become) – Ann started going in for sports without any enthusiasm to become a master of sports.

1. The child woke up. He saw that he was alone. (to see) 2. They reached Le Havre in the early afternoon. They found that there was no steamer. (only to find) 3. Jack broke his leg badly while playing in a football match. Since then he could never go in for football again. (never to go) 4. She stopped at the corner. She understood that she had to go on. (only to understand) 5. She rushed home. She found that a thief was exploring the house. (to find) 6. She woke up. She saw that the sun was shining. (to see) 7. Thousands of fans came to see the competition in track and field events. They were unexpectedly struck by the new record. (to be struck) 8. He acted according to his conviction. He understood that nobody cared for his opinion. (only to understand) 9. The police arrived almost immediately. They found that the criminals had disappeared. (only to find) 10. She looked at her face attentively. She saw that she resembled her mother. (to see) 11. She made him confess. She understood that his confession didn't move her. (only to understand) 12. He went to America. Soon he died of a heart attack. (to die) 13. At the age of 45 he resigned. He never returned to public life. (never to return) 14. Rose often complained of pains in her leg. Her husband wasn't sorry for her. (only to see) 15. Steve tried to talk her into going to Paris. Soon he realized that he failed. (only to realize) 16. I returned from America. I found that my sister had bought a new house. (to find) 17. She entered the room. She found that her husband was talking to a stranger. (to find)

11. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. Наші друзі відвідали нас минулого літа і більше не приїжджали до нас після цього. 2. Він прокинувся рано вранці й побачив, що кімната була порожня. 3. Він одного разу освідчився їй у коханні й більше ніколи не вимовляв цих слів. 4. Батько дав йому мудру пораду, але лише переконався, що син не має наміру прислухатися до його поради. 5. Він здивовано подивився на неї і виявив, що все сказане ним не викликало в ній навіть роздратування. 6. Ден закінчив грати і побачив, що публіка була в захваті. 7. Вона посміхнулася і зрозуміла, що її посмішка викликає в нього захоплення. 8. Діти прибігли до кімнати й побачили, що там повно гостей. 9. Вона сказала йому все про їхні стосунки і більше ніколи не поверталася до цієї теми. 10. Після тривалої подорожі він повернувся додому і зрозумів, що в гостях добре, а вдома краще. 11. Він пройшов через усі кімнати й побачив тільки кішку на кухні. Квартира була порожня. 12. Вона відчинила двері й побачила, що батько ходить взад і вперед у сильному гніві. 13. Після довгої відсутності вона повернулася додому і зрозуміла, що нічого не змінилося: вони не пробачили її. 14. Вона відчинила двері й побачила, що всі вже зібралися й чекають на неї.

12. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of time. Paraphrase the sentences using adverbial clauses of time.

Model: I was pleased to see you yesterday. – I was pleased when I saw you yesterday.

1. My grandma lived to be 83. 2. Erik was scared to see you as it was very dark. 3. I was surprised to learn that Ellen had got that job. 4. She was displeased to be told that she was a troublemaker. 5. They were happy to be asked for help. 6. They expressed relief to be told she

had given birth to a child. 7. His father was furious to learn that he had done a dishonorable thing. 8. We could hardly believe our eyes to see that the room was full of nice presents and flowers. 9. She felt miserable to be eventually exposed. 10. I was happy to hear that they had gone to London. 11. She was excited to hear from her son. 12. Ann felt sad to hear those rumours. 13. He was surprised to learn how much he'd spent. 14. Mr. Smith lived to be 90.

13. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive as adverbial modifier of time.

1. Марк розгнівався, коли дізнався, що син без дозволу взяв його машину. 2. Джоан зраділа, коли їй повідомили, що будинок побудовано і вони можуть переїхати туди. 3. Він засмутився, коли дізнався, що ціни піднялися. 4. Ми були незадоволені, коли нам повідомили, що будинок продали дешево. 5. Дівчинка злякалася, коли побачила незнайомця. 6. Він був приголомшений, коли йому сказали, що Лідія гратиме головну роль. 7. Вона перестала хвилюватися за нього, коли їй стало відомо, що він отримає хорошу роботу. 8. Стів був розлючений, коли побачив, що від його будинку не залишилося й сліду. 9. Вона була щаслива, коли їй сказали, що на них чекає цікава подорож.

14. Paraphrase the sentences using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of time. Pay attention to the voice of the Infinitive.

Model: *She was unhappy when she was told that her son had been dismissed from his job. – She was unhappy to be told that her son had been dismissed from his job.*

When I heard that they had moved in I was happy. – I was happy to hear that they had moved in.

1. When Sarah learnt that the boy was an orphan she felt sorry for him. 2. When she saw that the little girl was in tears she burst into tears herself. 3. When he heard Mr. Jack talk like that he trembled with rage. 4. There was joy in Mrs. Ford's eyes when she knew that her daughter was going to marry. 5. He spread his arms wide and felt joyous when he heard that Kay was coming back. 6. Sharon was excited when she heard from her son. 7. She shouted with joy when they told her she was free. 8. He embraced me with exclamations of joy when I told him that he had been elected President. 9. He stormed out of the room in a rage when he found his papers stolen. 10. She felt sad when she heard those rumours. 11. The man clenched his fists in fury when he learned that his wife had been deeply insulted. 12. He flew into a fury and threatened to kick them out of the room when he heard that his best friend had betrayed him. 13. His face showed his joy the moment he saw me. 14. She looked up at us with jealousy when she heard that we had bought a new car.

15. Underline the infinitive or the infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of exception.

1. They do nothing but walk all day long. 2. What can I do but buy another suit? 3. There's nothing to do except believe her that he is alive. 4. What can we do but agree to take the business in our hands? 5. There was nothing to do except leave them alone and wait till they realized that they needed our help. 6. What could she do but forgive them and forget about what they had done? 7. She does nothing but make noise and disturb him. 8. There's nothing to do except watch her day and night. 9. The electrician had nothing to do but attend to his switches.

16. Translate the sentences into English using an infinitive or an infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of exception.

1. Він тільки й робить, що висміює її. 2. Що я міг зробити, окрім як пожаліти його і взяти до себе? 3. Більше нічого не залишається, окрім як позичити гроші й розплатитися з ним. 4. Що він може зробити, окрім як дозволити їм бачитися з дитиною? 5. Вони тільки й робили, що грали в казино (casino) цілими днями. 6. Більше нічого не залишалось, окрім

як молитися за нього. 7. Що викладач міг ще зробити, окрім як заплющити очі (to turn a blind eye to smth.) на всі його помилки і поставити йому трійку. 8. Більше нічого не залишалось, окрім як скористатися їхнім запрошенням і вирушити до них повечеряти. 9. Вони тільки й роблять, що набридають йому розмовами про свої сімейні справи. 10. Що його батько міг зробити, окрім як висловити свою точку зору і дати йому мудру пораду? 11. Вона тільки й робить, що змушує його вирішувати свої особисті проблеми. 12. Йому більше нічого не залишається, окрім як звернутися до першого незнайомця і попросити в нього допомоги.

17. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as adverbial modifier of comparison/manner. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. She waved her hand as if to give some sign to him. 2. He shook his hand as though to show that he was dissatisfied. 3. Everyone knows that to tell the truth is better than to tell lies. 4. She paused for half a minute as if to drop a hint that she was tired of talking. 5. To my surprise, Mrs. Philips gave her a look as if to ask her about her wartime romance. 6. To buy a violin is much easier than to rent a piano and it won't take up much room. 7. It's a truly happy ending and to see them happy is far better than find them all dead. 8. Marty stretched her hand towards him as if to ask him for help. 9. Ben looked sadly at his mother as though to let her know that he felt sorry for her. 10. Her voice trembled as if to prove her being nervous and excited. 11. He was the first to break the silence and it was wiser on his part at that moment than wait till they uttered a word. 12. He looked at me for a moment and all of a sudden he screamed horribly as though to frighten me. 13. He clutched the papers to his heart as if to show that there was nothing more important for him than to have them with him. 14. To go to Switzerland on business is more important than to stay here and talk things over with our partners.

18. Paraphrase the sentences using an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase as adverbial modifier of comparison/manner. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: *He looked at me in such a way that I felt he wanted to shock me. — He looked at me as if to shock me.*

1. The man whistled. It seemed he wanted to attract my attention. 2. They exchanged meaningful glances. The impression was they wanted to show us they were together. 3. When being criticized he usually shrugged his shoulders. Probably he wanted to say that it had nothing to do with him. 4. The lady came up to me and gave me a strange look as if she wanted to say that I was inappropriately dressed. 5. He sounded as a stranger as if he wanted to show that he couldn't master the local dialect. 6. She exclaimed that she had never done it and burst into tears which might prove that she had told the truth. 7. He wanted to surprise everybody and appeared quite unexpectedly. 8. She gasped and thus showed that she heard it for the first time in her life. 9. She looked at him as if she wanted to comfort him. 10. My sister giggled and it proved that she didn't take his proposal seriously. 11. The girl kept weeping and thus showed that she was really depressed and miserable. 12. Susan didn't phone him for a long time which might prove that she didn't need him. 13. He made an angry gesture with his fist and showed her that he wasn't going to forgive her.

THE INFINITIVE AS PARENTHESIS

As parenthesis the infinitive is used as part of some set expressions, such as:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. to begin with | 9. to put it mildly |
| 2. to be more precise | 10. to put it more plainly |
| 3. to be quite frank | 11. to say the least |
| 4. to be sure | 12. to say nothing of |
| 5. to crown it all | 13. so to speak |
| 6. to make the matter worse | 14. strange to say |
| 7. to make a long story short | 15. to sum it up |

8. needless to say

16. to tell the truth

As a rule a parenthesis refers to the whole sentence or clause and is placed at the beginning of the sentence though sometimes it may be placed in the middle of the sentence.

e.g. To tell you the truth, I'm glad to have a companion myself.

To cut a long story short, everything ended to her delight.

To sum it up, I completely lost control of the situation.

1. Underline the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase used as parenthesis. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model: To cut it short, she failed to do it. Короче говоря, ей не удалось это сделать.

1. A good teacher should try, so to speak, to breathe life into his or her subject. 2. To be frank, she realized that she had no claims on him. 3. To tell the truth, I cherish a hope that one day we will be reunited. 4. To crown it all, the magazine was forced to close down. 5. To put it mildly, the doctor was either a charlatan or a shrewd old rogue. 6. To be more precise, I wouldn't call it awful, but it wasn't very well written. 7. To begin with, you need to brush up your French. 8. To speak the truth, I'll have another breakdown if I stay any longer in this house. 9. Needless to say, it is my earnest wish that you use this money to further your research. 10. To say the least, she lacked tact in expressing her views. 11. To make a long story short, they acquired a reputation of being a formidable opponent. 12. To put it more plainly, if there's anything you want to see, just drop by. 13. To put it in a nutshell, he tried to give a sympathetic ear at all times. 14. He was terribly slow, to be sure, and spoke as if he was half asleep or dragged. 15. To be quite frank, it's early yet to say whether it works.

2. Make up sentences using the following infinitive phrases paren- thetically:

1. to make a long story short; 2. to put it mildly; 3. to crown it all; 4. to tell you the truth; 5. to say the least of it; 6. to begin with; 7. to judge by her appearance.

3. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the Infinitive as parenthesis.

1 Точніше сказати, він не хоче, щоб ми втручалися в його справи. 2. Відверто кажучи, я ситий по горло її скаргами. 3. Як не дивно, але вона ніколи нам не телефонує. 4. М'яко кажучи, він рідко співчуває їй. 5. Коротше кажучи, залишимо всі розмови і приступимо до справи. 6. Загалом, це коштувало нам дорого: будинок, меблі, не кажучи вже про гараж. 7. Щонайменше, вона вчинила нерозумно. 8. Простіше кажучи, якщо хочете приєднатися до нас, приїжджайте вранці рано і ми вас відвеземо туди. 9. Зайве казати, що вона любить Вас і - чекає. 10. Коротше кажучи, ми не збираємося нав'язуватися їм (to intrude on someone). 11. Якщо чесно, мені хотілося б з'їздити туди. 12. Він, так би мовити, занадто молодий для такої кар'єри. 13. Я зрозумів, а точніше, відчув, чому вони відмовилися співпрацювати з нами. 14. Твій шанувальник, тобто твій майбутній чоловік, обіцяє допомогти вам? 15. М'яко кажучи, вона була неввічливою. 16. Сказати по правді, я не люблю бокс. 17. Почнемо з того, що я зайнятий. 18. Коротше кажучи, він не склав іспит. 19. Ми всі були раді, не кажучи вже про маму: вона сказала, що це найщасливіший день у її житті. 20. Це дуже дивно, щонайменше. 21. Для початку, вона відчинила всі вікна. 22. Правду кажучи, я дуже втомився. 23. М'яко кажучи, ви мене здивували. 24. Коротше кажучи, вони одружилися.

REVISION

1. Match the parts of the sentences choosing the proper adverbial modifier expressed by an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. John is clever enough | 1. to marry for love. |
| 2. He switched off the radio | 2. to see there was nobody in the room. |
| 3. We were upset | 3. to make a positive impression. |
| 4. Lizzy does nothing but | 4. to say he was going to have a sleep. |
| 5. The teacher came in | 5. to know that her grandson gets better. |
| 6. His mother would be happy
each other. | 6. to learn that they drifted away from |
| 7. Sally is too down-to-earth | 7. manipulate her children. |
| 8. He took a quick look at the picture | 8. never to find another one. |
| 9. To have too much money seems
to be better than | 9. as if to say he is not interested in
painting. |
| 10. He gave up his job | 10. to have little money. |

2. Point out the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase. Comment on the function of the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He finds it a lot better to have a strong national defence than a balanced budget. 2. God grants liberty only to those who love it, and are always ready to guard and defend it. 3. I didn't move to Miami to live in a Spanish-speaking province. 4. The purpose of education is, at a minimum, to prepare people for work. 5. They think they have to bring in the weapons to protect themselves. 6. After that there will be nothing to distribute. 7. He is rich enough to devote himself to arts. 8. An industry that cannot pay its workers a decent living wage has no right to exist. 9. It is rather hard to be accused of idleness when the accuser closes the avenue of labour to us. 10. In this country there are no rich people to live at the expense of the poor. 11. I'm good enough to shed my blood for the country. 12. Diplomacy is to do and say the nastiest things in the nicest way. 13. Sometimes you have to fire a hostile gun to repel the attacks of the enemy. 14. It is not enough just to take this weapon out of the hands of the soldiers. 15. A Congressman's first duty is to get elected. 16. It is hard to organize a constitutional society of free men; it is easy to impose a reign of terror. 17. The only way to get respect is to respect others. 18. Though I have become Emperor, I have not ceased to be a citizen. 19. To doubt is sometimes to lose. 20. In most my campaigns, I find it best not to mention my opponent by name. 21. The best way to keep one's word is not to give it. 22. To tell you the truth, we don't need ministries. What can they give us? Nothing.

3. State the functions of the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrase.

1. No, I don't have any favourite opponent. It's not my duty to select my opposition. 2. When you run a campaign, the idea is to appeal to people. 3. Though he resisted his father got him to read. 4. The common people who marched for the right to vote must now march for the right to breathe. 5. Being literate is to be liberated. 6. It is difficult if not impossible to solve the pollution problem on a state-by-state basis. 7. The only way is to stay here and wait. 8. In order to have economic democracy think of having equal access to property. 9. There's no belt to tighten anymore. 10. It is a terribly hard job to spend a billion of dollars and get your money worth. 11. Our job is not to be part of your ridiculous plan. 12. I hope I shall always possess firmness and virtue enough to maintain the title of an «Honest man». 13. There isn't any way to keep drugs out of this country. 14. It's important to understand who the enemy is. 15. Don't have anything to do with them. They only bring you trouble. 16. It's not easy to keep up our wasteful economy. 17. It is shocking to smite down trees for more decoration. 18. That didn't leave them much to prove their abilities. 19. I have no country to fight for. 20. His only concern was to get some food and to find a shelter somewhere. 21. For some people it's important to be important. 22. I never heard him recite his poems. 23. They turned out to have caused his death. 24. The village is easy to find if you have got a map. 25. They can't be working now. It's too late and dark. 26. We shouldn't think about the government's problems. 27. Make him do it or he will get ill. 28. The ultimate aim is to liberate them from the peculiar psychological complex.

29. Tom's wife is interesting to talk to. 30. It is really the danger most to be feared. 31. When he got the post he started to fight for the rights. 32. It's the best way to make sure a war never starts. 33. The book was impossible to read. 34. They never know what to do but they teach everyone how to do things. 35. The candidate is too famous to be unanimously elected 36. The area is very convenient to live in but he feels so lonely here.

4. Make up your own sentences. Use one Infinitive in all possible functions. Comment on the function of the Infinitive in your examples.

Model: *To swim is healthy. / It's healthy to swim.* (subject)

1. To keep fit one should swim or do his morning exercises. (part of a compound verbal modal predicate) 2. He seems to swim well. (part of a compound verbal predicate of double orientation) 3. He started to swim rather well. (part of a compound verbal phasal predicate) 4. His wish is to swim nearly every morning. / His problem is where to swim. (predicative) 5. The river is pleasant to swim in. (part of predicative) 6. Jack dislikes to swim in cold weather. (object) 7. To swim well you should go to the swimming pool at least once a week. (adverbial modifier of purpose) 8. He is big enough to swim well. (adverbial modifier of result) 9. The idea to swim in the lake all the year round seems a crazy one. (attribute)

5. Translate into English. Use an Infinitive or an Infinitive phrase.

1. Легко читати цю книгу в оригіналі. 2. Неважно навчитися фотографувати. 3. Неможливо переплисти цю річку. 4. Необхідно подивитися цей фільм. Важливо сказати їм про це. 5. Пора їм зателефонувати. 6. Пора їхати. 7. Час збирати речі. 8. Час викликати таксі. 9. Час погуляти із собакою. 10. Він завжди виступає останнім. 11. У тебе є що-небудь попити? 12. Це картина, яку треба повісити на ту стіну. 13. У нього немає нікого, кому він міг би довіряти. 14. Ось гроші, які можна витратити на їжу. 15. Сестра взяла цю книгу, щоб допомогти тобі. 16. Ми зателефонували йому, щоб попередити його. 17. Викликали медсестру, щоб зробити йому укол. 18. Будинок продали, щоб заплатити борг. 19. Я прийшов до тебе, щоб поговорити про нього. 20. Я люблю гуляти вечорами. 21. Терпіти не можу їсти щільно вранці. 22. Він обожає обідати в ресторані. 23. Батько любить читати газету за обідом. 24. Не люблю засмагати. 25. Це село неможливо знайти без провідника. 26. Такий будинок складно побудувати. 27. Його легко помітити. 28. У такого хлопця легко закохатися. 29. Таку сукню дуже важко пошити.

PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE INFINITIVE

Predicative constructions involve arrangements where the syntactic roles of individual components vary from the role of the entire phrase. The following structures, employing the infinitive, are utilized in Modern English:

- a) the Objective-with-the-Infinitive construction;
- b) the Subjective-with-the-Infinitive construction;
- c) the for-to-Infinitive construction.

THE OBJECTIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

The objective with the infinitive construction forms a complex object, thus it follows the predicate of the sentence.

The construction consists of

- 1) a nominal element (a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case);
- 2) an infinitive which is in predicate relation to the noun or the pronoun.

Noun /Pronoun + to+V (in any form)

Noun /Pronoun + V (bare infinitive)

1. The Objective with the Infinitive construction is used after verbs denoting sense perception (**to see,**

to hear, to feel, to watch, to observe, to notice, etc.) With these verbs only a bare non-perfect, non-continuous, active Infinitive is used.

e.g. I **saw** the man __ **break** the window. (I saw the complete act.)

I **heard** the dog __ **bark**. (I heard a dog give one bark.)

I didn't **notice** you __ **raise** your hand. (a complete act.)

Did you **feel** the earth __ **move**?

After these verbs the Infinitive indicates that we heard or saw the whole of the action or event, that's why it is often translated into Ukrainian by a verb in the past

If the meaning is passive, Participle II is used.

She **watched** the work **completed**.

If a process is expressed, Participle I is used.

She **watched** them **completing** the work.

Note: When the verb **to see** is used in the meaning **to realize, to understand** or the verb **to hear** is used in the meaning **to learn**, the Objective with the Infinitive construction cannot be used. In such cases a subordinate clause is used.

I saw that he didn't understand me.

I hear that he lives in San Francisco again.

Note: After the verbs **to see, to notice** when they denote sense perception the Infinitive of the verb **to be** is not used. Instead a subordinate clause is used.

I noticed that he was unwell. Я заметил, что ему нехорошо;

We saw that he was in. Я увидел, что он дома.

2. The Objective with the Infinitive construction is used after verbs of mental activity (**to think, to believe, to imagine, to consider, to expect, to understand, to suppose, to feel, to find etc.**). After these verbs the Infinitive may be used in any form though non-perfect forms are more frequent.

e.g. *I've never **known** him **to read** so much.*

*I **thought** him **to be** an excellent choice.*

*I **believed/thought** her **to be watching** TV in the drawing room.*

After these verbs, however, the Objective with the Infinitive construction is rather literary and not very common. These verbs are more often used with a that-clause (an object clause).

e.g. *I **thought** that he was an excellent choice.*

The Infinitive may be omitted when followed by an adjective (or sometimes a noun).

e.g. *I **think** him __ very clever and talented.*

*I **found** the lecture __ dull and uninteresting.*

*I **believe** her __ a true friend.*

3. The Objective with the Infinitive construction is used after verbs of feeling and emotion (**to like, to love, to hate, to dislike, cannot bear, cannot stand etc.**)

e.g. *I **like** people **to tell** the truth*

*She **hated** him **to speak** like that.*

*The child **loved** his mother **to sing** to him.*

*I **can't bear** him **to be separated** from me.*

4. The Objective with the Infinitive construction is used after verbs of wish and intention (**to want, to wish, to desire, to mean, to intend, etc.**).

e.g. *I **want** you **to believe** me.*

5. After verbs of declaring (**to declare, to report, to pronounce, etc.**).

e.g. *They **reported** the plane **to have** landed.*

6. After verbs of inducement (**to force, to have, to make, to get, to cause, etc.**), when to have is used in the meaning of змусити, сказати, щоб; to make in the meaning of змусити; to cause in the meaning of змусити, дати розпорядження.

Note: the verbs to have and to make are followed in this construction only by a bare infinitive.

e.g. *I **hope** you'll **have** him **sign** the papers.*

*I **made** my son **do** his homework.*

7. After verbs of order or permission (**to order, to allow, to suffer, to ask, to let, to tell, etc.**).

Note: the verb to let is followed by a bare infinitive.

e.g. *Let me **help** you.*

With these verbs except **to suffer, to tell** and **to let** we find the Objective with the Infinitive

construction only if its first part denotes a **lifeless thing** (expressed by a noun or pronoun) or when the Infinitive is **passive**.

e.g. *I didn't allow the name to pass my lips.*

The boss asked the letter to be delivered at once.

He ordered the picture to be carried away.

If the object is expressed by a noun or a pronoun denoting a **living being** and the Infinitive is **active**, there are two objects and there is no Infinitive construction:

object 1 object 2

He **ordered** the secretary **to bring the letters.**

1) He **ordered** the secretary.

2) He **ordered** to bring the letters.

8. The Objective with the Infinitive construction is used after some verbs requiring a prepositional object (**to count on, to look for, to listen to, to rely on, to wait for**)

We counted on you to come and help us. Мы рассчитывали, что ты придешь и поможешь нам.

I rely on you to come in time

e.g. *We counted on him to help us.*

Subject	Predicate	The Objective with the Infinitive construction	
		Noun in the common case Pronoun in the Objective case	+ Infinitive
We	want	John her son him	to come. to visit us. to study well.

1. Underline the Objective with the Infinitive construction. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the type of the verb preceding the construction and the way of rendering the construction in Ukrainian.

A. 1. We can't believe him to have robbed the bank. 2. He hated her to wake him up every morning. 3. They reported the train to have arrived. 4. I'll get you to give the money back. 5. We relied on her to book the tickets. 6. Jill loved her child to recite nursery rhymes at their family parties. 7. I find him to be a very experienced computer engineer. 8. We all know him to be a first-class ballet dancer. 9. I thought him to be the most disagreeable person. 10. She disliked her mother to work till late at night.

B. 1. She wanted the house to be let as soon as possible. 2. Susan ordered the tea to be brought. 3. I wouldn't allow my cottage to be sold. 4. I didn't mean her to be invited here. 5. I'd like my book to be published in English. 6. He wished the play to be staged at the local theatre. 7. They couldn't allow all the money to be given to one person. 8. He preferred the pictures to be exhibited in the central gallery. 9. The manager ordered the contract to be translated into English. 10. We'd like the car to be parked near the office.

C. 1. I can't make you obey. 2. She saw a little girl approach the house. 3. I'm sorry, I didn't notice you enter the room. 4. Let her say whatever she wants to. 5. Nobody will have her stay here. 6. Can you make her apply mustard plasters? 7. I saw him play computer games. 8. She usually lets her son stay at home when he feels sick. 9. I'll never have him give up his job. 10. Did you notice the dean come into the room?

2. Translate the sentences from English into Ukrainian. Point out the Objective with the Infinitive construction if any after the verbs of order and permission.

Model: *The film director asked the camera to be changed. Режисер попросив замінити камеру.* The predicate is followed by an Objective with the Infinitive construction. The noun **camera** denotes a lifeless thing and is followed by the passive Infinitive **to be changed**. Together they form an Objective with the Infinitive construction.

1. The old woman asked the young man to carry her bag. 2. The teacher allowed the student to miss her lecture next week. 3. He ordered the fax-machine to be fixed. 4. He never asks tea to be made. He does it himself. 5. His mother didn't allow irritation to overwhelm her. 6. Felix asked the maid to change the towels. 7. Ann asked Charles to pick her up at the station. 8. Try not to allow the rumours to spread. 9. The doctor told him to stick to the diet and not to work so hard. 10. Nelly asked her luggage to be brought. 11. Please, allow my love to warm your heart and you won't feel lonely in this world. 12. Ask him to sleep with the window open. 13. Mabel allowed them to give her a call. 14. They asked the bushes to be trimmed, the flowers to be cut and arranged in the vase.

3. Complete the sentences using either an Objective with the Infinitive construction or a subordinate clause.

Model: *I saw ... (Jack, to fix his watch). I saw Jack fix his watch.* – complex object, sense perception.

I saw ... (Jack, to lie). I saw that Jack lied. – a subordinate clause, realized.

I heard ... (he, to shout). I heard him shout. – complex object, sense perception.

I heard ... (she, to leave for Paris). I heard that she had left for Paris. – a subordinate clause, learned.

1. I heard ... (the boys, to cry outside). 2. Dick saw ... (his pals, to deceive him). 3. Ben heard ... (his teacher, to talk with the dean). 4. She has never seen ... (her mother, to weep). 5. We hear ... (he, to live in Swansea). 6. Nora saw ... (her husband, to come to his studio). 7. Alex heard ... (the criminal, to sentence to death). 8. Can't you see ... (she, to be in love with him). 9. The girl heard ... (the old woman, to moan). 10. The boy saw ... (the car, to start at last). 11. He heard ... (his best friend, to divorce). 12. Hester saw ... (her boy-friend, to betray her).

Model: *She saw ... (he, to mend his car). She saw him mend his car.* – complex object

He saw ... (he, to be upset). He saw that he was upset. – a subordinate clause

1. We saw ... (they, to get into the car). 2. I noticed ... (she, to be nervous). 3. Dad saw ... (my sister, to be in low spirits). 4. She noticed ... (they, to steal the purse). 5. Mother saw ... (I, to be irritated with my friend). 6. I saw ... (he, to get off a bus). 7. The deputies saw ... (the speaker, to be angry with the journalist). 8. We noticed ... (the writer, to be shy when talking to the audience). 9. Jacob saw ... (Mr. Andrew, to be frightened). 10. Robert noticed ... (the stranger, to hide the papers).

4. Point out the Objective with the Infinitive construction. Pay attention to the use of the bare Infinitive. Underline the verbs preceding the construction with a bare Infinitive.

Model: *She saw her husband mow the lawn.*

1. I heard my neighbour snore. 2. Never let them watch you work or they will disturb you. 3. What made you come so early? 4. I've never seen them walk together. 5. Can't you have him glue the vase he broke yesterday? 6. She felt her hand tremble and realized he was excited. 7. I was very close to the phone box and noticed the man dial the number, and then I heard him say something to a certain Liz. 8. The doctor made the patient take the medicine and persuaded him to keep the bed. 9. How can you let your son go there alone? 10. I can't have him waste his money. He may need it. 11. We could watch them go out every evening. 12. Did you make her

get a new passport? 13. Let me wash your shirt. 14. Have you ever seen your daughter do the cleaning? 15. They borrowed the money, didn't they? Let them pay it back.

5. Paraphrase the sentences. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model 1: to see, to hear, to notice, to watch, etc.: *I saw that the children ran round the house. – I saw the children run round the house.*

1. We heard that the actor sang. 2. Little Bobby watched how his father polished the floor. 3. I noticed that the woman passed him by and gave him a quick and strange look. 4. I heard that he played the guitar. 5. She felt that he touched her on the back and heard that he whispered something tenderly.

Model 2: to want, to wish, to desire, to mean, etc.: *His wish was that his family should spend the weekend somewhere in a quiet place. – He wished his family to spend the weekend somewhere in a quiet place.*

1. I didn't mean that you should go there immediately. 2. He wanted an apple pie and asked his wife if she could make it for dinner. 3. Her great desire was that her boy friend should recover and live a long and happy life. 4. His son's wish was that his father should buy him a new Mini. 5. Do you mean that he should bring his girl-friend to the party? 6. I want another pair of shoes and I would like that you should help me to choose the style and colour matching my yellow suit.

Model 3: to like, to love, to dislike, to hate, cannot bear, etc.: *I like (it) when you come to see us. – I like you to come to see us.*

1. She hates when people lie. 2. All children love when their parents kiss them before their going to bed. 3. I cannot bear when he says bad words. 4. Do you like when your guests leave your place late? 5. He hates when his wife talks with her friends for hours on the phone. 6. I can't say that I love when you watch thrillers or soap-operas.

Model 4: to count on, to rely on: *I count on your coming in time. – I count on you to come in time.*

1. She relied on his helping them in any trouble. 2. We counted on their bringing some wine and didn't go to the supermarket. 3. You can count on my help. 4. I believe you will make the right decision. 5. Never rely on someone's phoning you and saying what to do. 6. The nation believed that the king would provide leadership.

Model 5: to order, to allow, to ask, etc.: *His request was to post the letter. – He asked the letter to be posted.*

1. The chiefs order was to check all the papers. 2. She gave permission to sell the house. 3. He begged to give the money back to him. 4. Mr. Brief asked to bring him a glass of hot milk and a bun. 5. The captain ordered to change the plan and go in a different direction. 6. My request was to buy a new car.

Model 6: to have, to make, to let, to get, to cause: *They forced him to go out. – They made him go out.*

1. They forced us to sit and wait. 2. Her parents wouldn't give her permission to go out with boys. 3. She heard some strange sound and stepped aside. 4. Stuart doesn't want to do it but he will find a good reason for his doing that. 5. I hope you'll tell her to sell the car. 6. There's no reason for him to leave his home-town.

Model 7: to report, to declare, to pronounce: *They reported that the train had already started. – They reported the train to have already started.*

1. The boys reported that the translation had been completed. 2. The surgeon pronounced that the patient had recovered. 3. He reported that the robber had been caught. 4. She declared that he would come again some day. 5. They declared that the general wasn't guilty. 6. They reported that our wages would be paid on time.

Model 8: to think, to believe, to consider, to expect, to know, to suppose, to find: *We expected that they would arrive at 5 p.m. – We expected them to arrive at 5 p.m.*

1. I find that her nephew looks much younger. 2. They consider that Charles Simon did it on purpose. 3. We expect that her daughter will manage to enter the University. 4. I thought you'd cheated her. 5. They suppose that dogs love only kind people. 6. I've never known that she used to be an actress.

6. Finish the sentences.

Model: *You should learn French. – I want you ... I want you to learn French. She swept the floor. – I made her ... I made her sweep the floor.*

1. I had to return home before midnight. Mother had me ... 2. He is to pay the bill. Please, have him ... 3. We had to wait for hours. The producer made us ... 4. David always tells silly jokes, and Debby hates it. Debby can't bear David ... 5. The house shook as the earthquake started. The earthquake made the house ... 6. She must come to see us. Get her ... 7. They left very early. I didn't expect them ... 8. He will never tell lies. Have you ever known him ... 9. I helped my friend translate the text. My friend had me ... 10. They ran after the burglar. Did you see them ...? 11. Could you lend me your car? I want you ... 12. Shall I believe her? She tried to make me ... 13. The wind blew her hat down the street. They watched the wind ... 14. She wanted to hurt him by her words. She meant her words ... 15. Why do you say that? What makes you ...? 16. Why do you think that? What makes you ...? 17. I was sure he would keep his promise. I expected him ... 18. They never come on time. Have you ever known ...? 19. They never speak rudely. Have you ever heard ...? 20. She seldom dances. Have you ever seen ...?

7. Answer the following questions. Give a complete answer. Use a complex object.

1. What do you want your friend to do on Saturday? 2. What do you expect your friend to do on Sunday? 3. Where do you want your friend to go with you? 4. Where do you want your friend to invite you? 5. What restaurant would you like your friend to invite you to? 6. What present would you like your friend to give you? 7. Where do you let your dog run? 8. Why do you let your dog run on its own? 9. What do you make your dog do while walking? 10. Who do you let your dog play with? 11. What do you have your dog eat in the morning/evening?

8. Translate the sentences into English using the Objective with the Infinitive construction.

1. Ніколи не чув, щоб він читав вірші. 2. Через нього вона поїхала і кинула хорошу роботу. 3. Нехай він вступає, куди хоче, і сам зрозуміє, якщо це неправильний вибір. 4. Я побачила, як він відчинив двері й увійшов, коли нікого не було в будинку. 5. Невже вона не може змусити свого чоловіка зробити ремонт? 6. Не думала, що він знущується (to mock smb.) над власною дитиною. 7. Не повірю, що вони відмовилися від нової квартири. 8. Я вважаю, що його доповідь - це нове слово в науці. 9. Мені не подобається, коли ви приходите без попередження. 10. Не терплю, коли ти бездіяльний замість того, щоб чимось допомогти йому. 11. Хочу, щоб вони з'їздили відпочити і трохи розважитися. 12. Не дозволю, щоб паплюжили його чесне ім'я. (to blacken one's reputation) 13. Як мені змусити їх зробити роботу вчасно? 14. Я не хочу покладатися на те, що хтось витратить свої гроші, намагаючись врятувати становище. 15. Він ніколи не наказує своїм

співробітникам щось робити, а просто просить їх. 16. Люблю, коли ти телефонуєш мені вечорами. 17. Я раніше спостерігав, як він іде під руку зі своєю дружиною. (to take one's arm) 18. Вважаю, що цей фільм не для дітей.

9. Use the infinitives in brackets as parts of complex objects. Make all the necessary changes.

1. The pills the doctor has given me made me (to feel) much better. 2. I saw my father (to leave) the house that very morning. 3. George was sure that fresh air and exercise would make us (to sleep) well. 4. I thought it (to be) a signal to start. 5. We didn't expect him (to come back) so soon and were wondering what had happened. 6. I'd like it (to be done) as quietly as possible, without attracting anybody's attention. 7. Just at that moment he heard his door (to open) and quickly (to shut). 8. The regulations require me (to wear) this uniform. 9. James promised me (to arrive) on time. 10. I told her (to return) the book promptly. 11. Everybody saw him (to lock) the door and (to put) the key into his pocket. 12. He felt the eyes of his group (to rest) on him. 13. There is some information I want you (to obtain). 14. He liked to see them (to work). 15. He let them (to go). 16. Lawson nodded quickly and walked away. Philip felt a shiver (to pass) through his heart. 17. Amy speaks ten languages perfectly well! You can't expect me (to believe) that. 18. I've never heard him (to speak) of his life in Australia.

10. a) Combine the sentences using the complex object.

Model: *I didn't see him. He entered the house. – I didn't see him enter the house.*

I saw him. He was entering the house. – I saw him entering the house.

1. He heard her. She was playing the piano. 2. He saw her. She burst into tears. 3. They didn't notice us. We passed by. 4. I felt her hand. It was shaking. 5. I heard them. They were arguing. 6. She heard the footsteps. They were dying away. 7. We many times heard him. He told this story. 8. She noticed the expression of his face. It changed suddenly. 9. She felt something. It was crawling around her neck. 10. I heard somebody. He mentioned my name. 11. I felt something hard. It hurt my leg. 12. They haven't seen the accident. It occurred at the corner. 13. He hasn't heard us. We called his name. 14. The burglar got into the house. The neighbours noticed it. 15. We shall go to the party. I would like that.

b) Change complex sentences into sentences with the complex object.

1. We expect that he will solve this problem soon. 2. I've heard how she was crying. 3. I hate when people shout at each other. 4. She could hardly believe that he had been rescued. 5. She likes to watch how the sun sets. 6. They suppose that he will cope with this work. 7. She saw how the children were playing in the yard. 8. I didn't expect that she would forget about my birthday. 9. I don't like when the children are late for dinner. 10. I suspect that he has taken my money. 14. Don't consider that he is a hero. He is an ordinary man. 12. Do you know that he went abroad two days ago? 13. I cannot bear when she says bad words. 14. I believe you will make the right decision. 15. The boys reported that the translation had been completed. 16. I find that her nephew looks much younger. 17. He hates when his wife talks with her friends for hours on the phone. 18. They declared that the general wasn't guilty. 19. They consider that Charles did it on purpose. 20. She felt that he touched her on the back and heard that he whispered something tenderly. 21. I didn't mean that you should go there immediately. 22. I thought I'd cheated her.

11. Translate the sentences into English using an objective with the infinitive construction.

1. Я побачила, як він відчинив двері й увійшов, коли нікого не було вдома. 2. Ніколи не чув, щоб він читав вірші. 3. Нехай він поступає, куди хоче, і сам зрозуміє, якщо це неправильний вибір. 4. Невже вона не може змусити свого чоловіка зробити ремонт? 5. Не вірю, що вони відмовилися від нової квартири. 6. Мені не подобається, коли ви приходите без попередження. 7. Через нього вона поїхала і кинула хорошу роботу. 8. Не

терплю, коли ти не дієш замість того, щоб чимось йому допомогти. 9. Хочу, щоб вони з'їздили відпочити і трохи розважилися. 10. Вважаю, що цей фільм не для дітей. 11. Мері заявила, що ніколи не бачила цієї людини. 12. Як мені змусити їх зробити роботу вчасно? 13. Я не хочу покладатися на те, що хтось витратить свої гроші, намагаючись врятувати становище. 14. Люблю, коли ти телефонуєш мені вечорами. 15. Я вважаю, що його доповідь - це нове слово в науці. 16. Я раніше спостерігав, як він іде під руку зі своєю дружиною. 17. Не дозволю, щоб паплюжили його чесне ім'я. 18. Він ніколи не наказує щось робити, а просто просить своїх співробітників. 19. Ми вважаємо, що цей експеримент дуже важливий. 20. Дозвольте, будь ласка, взяти цю книгу зараз. 21. він не очікував, що я так швидко піду. 22. Давайте почекаємо їх біля входу. 23. вона чула, як поїхала його машина. 24. Вони радять мені знайти іншу роботу. 25. Його листи зазвичай змушували її сміятися. 26. Я чув, як він грюкнув дверима і пішов.

THE SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

The subjective infinitive construction consists of

- 1) a nominal element – a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case, and
- 2) a verbal element – an infinitive which denotes a state or an action performed by a person or non-person expressed by the nominal element.

The first part of the construction (the nominal one) forms the subject of the sentence and the Infinitive makes part of a compound verbal predicate.

e.g. *He is said to have been sent to New York.*

He seemed to be a nice man.

The Subjective Infinitive Construction

Noun in the common case or pronoun in the nominative case	a finite verb	Infinitive
The painter He	seemed is said	to see nothing. to have gone.

The Subjective Infinitive construction is used with a number of finite verbs which can be either active or passive. They all have the general meaning of attitude or comment when used with this construction.

I. The verbs used in the passive voice fall into four groups:

1. Verbs of sense perception (**to hear, to see, to observe, to watch**). When in the passive form these verbs are followed by a to-Infinitive. With this construction they express the idea of evidence of some fact. Here also belong some other verbs which in the passive voice express the idea of evidence (**to find, to discover, etc.**).

e.g. *He was seen to cross the river. (Somebody was a witness of this fact.)*

They were heard to enter the house. (Somebody heard it happen.)

Note: If a process is meant, non-perfect Participle I active is used: **They were seen swimming** across the river.

2. Verbs of mental perception (**to think, to know, to consider, to believe, to suppose, to expect, etc.**).

All of them express some kind of expectation, of opinion or of attitude to the action expressed by the Infinitive. With the verb **to expect** the Infinitive in this construction can refer to a future action.

e.g. *He was supposed to marry her. (Somebody was of the opinion that he should marry her. or Somebody expected him to marry her.)*

Everyone was thought/believed to have drowned.

He was known to run faster than anyone else

The soldiers were expected to do their duty in the coming battle.

3. Verbs of saying and reporting (**to say, to report**). They denote different kinds of judgement or comment of the action (state) expressed by the Infinitive.

e.g. *A new star was reported to have appeared in the East.*

The treaty is said to have been signed yesterday.

The government delegation is said to be arriving at the moment.

4. Verbs of inducement, compulsion and permission (**to make, to allow, to let, etc.**). When used in the passive voice the verbs **to make** and **to let** are followed by a to-Infinitive.

e.g. She was made to take pony-riding, or piano-exercise.

He had learned to keep his thoughts to himself. To do so, he had been forced to divest himself of all personality.

She was allowed to enter the room.

II. The verbs used in the active voice are: **to seem, to appear** – здається, схоже; **to happen, to chance (the latter is literary)** – траплятися, трапитися випадково; **to prove, to turn out** – виявляється.

e.g. His illness seemed to have made his eyes larger.

She had mentioned the fact to Rebecca, but this young lady didn't appear to have remembered it.

If Tom was merely sullen, Don appeared not to notice it.

No longer struggling he appeared not to be breathing at all.

The young people happened to meet the famous musician in the street.

On the long journey he proved himself to be an amusing companion.

As it happened my advice proved to be wrong.

He turned out to live in Hastings.

His statement turned out to be false.

III. The Subjective Infinitive construction is used with some modal phrases (**to be likely, to be unlikely, to be sure, to be certain**).

e.g. The children of divided parents in an unhappy home are likely to suffer in character.

I suspected that he was unlikely to require my presence.

I'll be sure to do that.

The secret is certain to come out.

With all these modal phrases the Infinitive denotes an action referring to the future, so they cannot be followed by a perfect Infinitive with reference to the past.

1. Underline the Subjective Infinitive construction. State the syntactical status of its elements (the nominal element and the Infinitive). Note the meaning of the finite verb. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model: *He was seen to unlock the door. Бачили, як він відчинив двері.*

The nominal element **He** is used as the subject of the sentence. The Infinitive **to unlock** is used as part of the compound verbal predicate of double orientation *was seen to unlock*. The finite verb is a verb of sense perception.

1. The problems never really seemed to affect his mode of life. 2. The criminal is unlikely to rob the bank. 3. He happened to do a dishonourable act against his conscience. 4. He was seen to be developing the film. 5. If you throw mud you are sure to slip in it. 6. They were discussing where they should go on Sunday and she happened to overhear them. 7. She was heard to phone her friend. 8. In democracies the people seem to act as they please. 9. They proved to have very little sense of freedom and independence. 10. The headmaster is supposed to take care of the staff. 11. She was seen to be trying on a new dress. 12. Until now we were of the impression that he was sure to get his scholarship. 13. His activities seem to serve noble purposes. 14. They are expected to solve all the family problems. 15. We sent them our comments on their work but they appear to take no interest. 16. The man was seen to get into the house. 17. Her ex-husband is believed to be living in Rome. 18. The children are never allowed to stay at home alone. 19. The team is likely to win the game. 20. The novel is known to have been published abroad. 21. She was let to park the car near the bank. 22. All the banks were reported to have been closed.

2. Match the Infinitive or the Infinitive phrases with the other parts suggested to make up a sentence with Subjective Infinitive constructions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. The students are likely | 1. to be emotionally fragile. |
| 2. My co-workers are supposed | 2. to be a messy child. |
| 3. Julia's little son seems | 3. to be very monotonous and tedious. |
| 4. My job appeared | 4. to be a close-knit family. |
| 5. The Browns proved | 5. to be doing well. |
| 6. All my classmates are said | 6. to have arrived. |
| 7. The American delegation is reported | 7. to be sent to Boston University. |
| 8. Robert applied for a job but happened | 8. to consult our foreign partners. |
| 9. Our friends are unlikely | 9. to make a negative impression at the interview. |
| 10. Little children are supposed | 10. to visit us this year. |

3. Join the elements of a Subjective Infinitive construction. Use the proper form of a finite verb.

Model: *He – to fall in love with her. (to be sure) He is sure to fall in love with her.*

1. They – to enjoy the film much. (to appear) 2. Tom – to catch the train. (to happen) 3. Ann – to be married. (to prove) 4. She – to have lost her money. (to turn out) 5. Her classmates – to be having a test. (to seem) 6. Jill – to have been badly injured in a car accident. (to say) 7. The concert – to begin at 8. (to report) 8. Her husband – to get a pay increase next month. (to expect) 9. The man – to have told the police about the accident. (to believe) 10. We – to phone him at work. (to suppose) 11. Your sister – to have behaved foolishly. (to think) 12. His father – to be in hospital now. (to know) 13. She – to take sleeping tablets. (to allow) 14. I – to miss the lecture. (to let) 15. He – to leave his job. (to force) 16. My boss – to sign the contract. (to make) 17. He – to paint the door. (to see) 18. The boys – to swear. (to hear) 19. The two men – to have broken the window. (to discover) 20. His visa – to be no longer valid. (to find) 21. They – to find a job at the moment. (to be unlikely) 22. All my group mates – to pass the exams. (to be likely) 23. George – to recognize you. (to be sure) 24. The secretary – to type your letters on time. (to be certain)

4. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a Subjective Infinitive construction. Note the underlined verb or verbal, the suggested verb or modal phrase and use it as a finite verb.

Model: *It is expected that the committee will help the refugees. The committee is expected to help the refugees.*

1. It is reported that the police caught the criminal. 2. It is believed that Mr. Kelly will have an operation next week. 3. It is said that Willie is in prison for robbery. 4. It is supposed that St. James's park is one of the nicest parks in London. 5. It is known that this football team have lost all their matches this season. 6. It is thought that the Council is still discussing the unemployment problem. 7. Probably he will lose a lot of money gambling. (to be likely) 8. I am not sure that the candidate will win the election. (to be unlikely) 9. It is certain that all of them will come to the party. (to be certain) 10. I am absolutely sure that they will solve the problems facing the company. (to be sure) 11. Nothing can make him emigrate to Australia. 12. Nobody will allow her to change her job. 13. They didn't want to stop the noise but their neighbours required that they should do it. (to force) 14. The girl's mother let her use the washing machine. 15. They saw that the fire brigade arrived. 16. Everyone heard that he shouted at his wife. 17. They discovered that the bicycle had been stolen. 18. It's certain that they will adopt the resolution. 19. The detective made the criminal confess. 20. It's known that the new tourist agency is the best. 21. They reported that the Prime Minister had left for the UN session.

5. Imagine you are a teacher talking to your student who plays truant a lot. Tell him what he is supposed/expected to do.

Use: to attend classes and lectures regularly; not to miss classes without good excuse; to do one's home assignment; to have tests; to speak at one's seminars; to take/pass all the exams, etc.

6. You are planning a trip to the USA. As you have only a few days off, you decide to fly there. What are you expected to do? Use suggested words and phrases and add something of your own.

Model: *to choose a flight – First of all I'm expected to choose a most suitable flight.*

to choose an airline; to get a visa; to look up the time-table; to make a reservation; to book the ticket beforehand; to pack the luggage; to take a taxi to go to the airport; to go through the customs; to submit the passport at the passport control; to check (by the security service); to go to the departure lounge and wait there till the flight is announced; to have a good book to read on the plane

What are you supposed to do when you arrive in New York?

to take a bus or a taxi to the hotel; to speak to the receptionist; to register at the hotel; to take the keys to the room; to take the things to the room; to unpack; to take a shower; to go sightseeing; to go to the Louvre; to walk along the Seine embankment; to watch the barges on the Seine river; to admire the beauty of the city

7. Report the rumours about an earthquake. Instead of *it's said*, *people say*, *they say* use a Subjective Infinitive construction.

Model: *It is said that the earthquake started in the early hours of the day. — The earthquake is said to have started in the early hours of the day.*

1. They say that a lot of buildings are damaged. 2. It is said that a lot of people rushed into the streets out of their beds. 3. They say that the earthquake killed many people. 4. They say that a lot of people have lost their dwellings. 5. It is said that people are expecting help from the government. 6. They say that the rescue team is still working in the ruins. 7. People say that a lot of volunteers are helping the rescue team. 8. It is said that the rescue team have found some people alive. 9. It is said that the Prime Minister arrived at the scene. 10. People say that some buildings remained intact. 11. They say that the emergency team arrived within minutes after the alarm was given. 12. It is said that a lot of people are looking for their relatives. 13. They say that many people need psychological help. 14. They say that people from the ruined houses need clothes.

8. Translate the sentences into English. Use a Subjective Infinitive construction.

1. Повідомляють, що вони дійшли до найвищої вершини. 2. Відомо, що комісія перевірила всі результати виборів. 3. Виявляється, він зараз складає іспити. 4. Навряд чи вона отримає стипендію. 5. Напевно батьки повезуть його у лікарню. 6. Бачили, що він зачинив вікно і погасив світло. 7. Їй ніколи не дозволяють ходити на дискотеку. 8. Кажуть, що він програв усі гроші. 9. Очікується, що цей музикант дасть три концерти. 10. Він пручався, але його змусили запросити Джексона на вечірку. 11. Передбачається, що переговори відбудуться відразу після приїзду делегації. 12. Думали, що він купить нову машину. 13. Чули, як задзвонив телефон. 14. Нас змусили вкласти гроші в будівництво будинку. 15. Ніколи не бачили, як він водить машину. 16. Здається, тебе шукає шеф. 17. Ти, звісно, схуднеш, якщо сядеш на дієту. 18. Малоймовірно, що він буде обідати не вдома. 19. Чули, що в нього маса друзів. 20. Безумовно, ми прийдемо до вас на весілля. 21. Виявилось, що у відпустку він їздив до Греції. 22. Повідомили, що літак приземлився

вчасно. 23. Нам дозволили фотографувати в соборі. 24. Вважають, що маленькі діти не повинні дивитися цей фільм.

9. Paraphrase the following sentences using complex subjects with the infinitive.

1. It's believed that John has arrived in London. 2. It's known that Jack is good at painting. 3. It's believed that he's clever. 4. It's said that he is the best student in our group. 5. It's known that he has collected a large number of pictures by Daly. 6. It's reported that the delegation of English teachers has left London. 7. It's considered that our ballet is the best in Europe. 8. It's reported that the spaceship has landed successfully. 9. It's said that he'll be one of the best students at our faculty in the nearest future. 10. It's expected that many delegates will arrive at this conference.

1. It seemed that she sensed the purpose of this question. 2. When she passed by it appeared that they were looking at her attentively. 3. It happened that his father came. 4. It happened that everybody had taken the problem seriously. 5. It proved that he was their devoted friend. 6. It seems that he is playing tennis. 7. It appears that Bill has been playing chess with his neighbour for two hours. 8. It was so wonderful to see old George. It seems he needs a friend. 9. It happened that Mary was at home at this time. 10. It proved that his plan was a great success.

1. It was likely that he had hidden my magazine under his papers. 2. It was unlikely that she would accept their invitation. 3. It's sure that my parents will come to see me at Christmas. 4. I think it's likely Peter will make that mistake. 5. It's unlikely that he'll come and see us soon. 6. It's likely the flight will be delayed. The weather is really awful. 7. It's certain that they'll have concluded the agreement by the end of December. 8. It's likely that the talks will continue till the end of the week. 9. It's certain that the meeting will be held on Friday. 10. It's unlikely that they'll get our letter so soon.

THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

The for-to-infinitive construction

The for-to-infinitive construction consists of

- 1) a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and
- 2) an infinitive which is in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun. The construction is preceded by the preposition *for*, and that explains the name of the construction.

e.g. They waited for the door to open. It is useless for me to speak to him.

This construction is translated into Ukrainian by either a subordinate clause or an infinitive:

e.g. First of all it had been an excitement for Eveline to have a fellow.

– Насамперед для Евелін було великою радістю те, що в неї з'явився молодий чоловік.

It was easy for me to answer that question. – Мені легко було відповісти на це запитання.

The for-to-infinitive construction may be used as:

1. a subject

e.g. For one to spend a summer with them was a wonderful experience.

But in this function the for-to-infinitive construction usually follows the introductory *it*.

e.g. It was usual for him to come in the nick of time.

2. a predicative

e.g. That is for you to decide.

2 a. part of a predicative

e.g. The room was easy for me to decorate.

3. a complex object

e.g. She didn't care for John to come.

They are anxious for the experiment to begin.

4. an attribute

e.g. There was no chance for her to meet him again.

5. an adverbial modifier of

a) purpose

e.g. He stopped for her to catch up with him.

b) result

In this function the construction is chiefly preceded by either the adverb *enough* or the adverb *too*.

e.g. He has done enough for me to hate him.

The lady was speaking too fast for me to catch what she said.

Remember that after an adjective describing someone's behaviour (nice, silly, etc.) we use a pattern with of.

kind	honest	silly
good	clever	stupid
helpful	intelligent	foolish
mean	sensible	careless
generous	reasonable	wrong
brave	nice	disgusting

e.g. *It was kind of your parents to give me a lift.*

The for-to-Infinitive construction			
	preposition	noun/pronoun	Infinitive
They waited	for	the door	to open.
It is useless	for	me	to speak to him.

1. Underline the for-to-infinitive construction. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. For Jane to make a pullover or a sweater is never a problem. 2. It was just a trifle for Bob to repair any motorcycle. 3. For Teddy to paint her portrait was a great pleasure. 4. It is impossible for any woman to resist this sort of temptation. 5. For Gordon to ask for advice meant that he was incapable to find a proper solution. 6. It was so hard for her to realize that she was accused of such a crime. 7. She wanted to ask him one or two questions but it was difficult for her to attract his attention. 8. The pill is so big that it's impossible for me to swallow it. 9. He has always liked taking risks and it isn't easy for us to persuade him not to do it now. 10. He kept walking quickly and I had to run as it was impossible for me to keep up with him. 11. Nellie was very keen on classical music and for her to listen to jazz or pop music was just like a terrible toothache. 12. For me to remember meeting him meant to remember everything that was connected with him.

2. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use *for*.

1. Sandy stood at the kitchen door waiting till Miss Brodie came for a walk by the sea. 2. It's quite natural that you should think so. 3. The first thing he must do is to ring them up. 4. It's time you should go, Tom. 5. There was nobody who she could speak to. 6. Janet sat and waited till he came up to us in order to ask the way again. 7. She then sat down in Mrs. Antoney's chair and waited till the kettle boiled. 8. He waited till the people spoke. 9. Let us wait till they settle the matter. 10. This is a problem you should solve by yourself. 11. I'll bring you the article that you may read. 12. He spoke loudly so that everyone might hear him. 13. There is nothing I can add. 14. It's very unusual that he should have said such a thing. 15. It's high time you knew grammar well.

3. Paraphrase the sentences using the introductory subject *it*. Translate the sentences.

Model: *For her to eat a dozen of cakes is quite a usual thing. – It is quite a usual thing for her to eat a dozen of cakes.*

1. For Valeria to play the piano was always a great pleasure. 2. For Jane to have a swim is impossible as she easily gets cold. 3. For Graham's granny to cook anything is not a problem – she is an excellent cook. 4. For Joe to be taken to see his baby was just everything. 5. For Sandy to put on this dress was to obey her mother. 6. For Jonathan to marry Sue was his eager wish. 7. For Ian to tell her the story of his life meant to open his heart. 8. For Mr. Hollowood to accept their invitation meant to forgive them. 9. For him to keep silent and not to insult him in return meant to withdraw from the battle with honour. 10. For Eleanor's husband to amuse himself by having people round him seemed absurd. 11. For Sally to go to an art gallery meant to waste time. 12. For Sid to get up early is always a problem – he is a night owl. 13. For me to marry Alfred wouldn't be a way out. 14. For her to go back to work would be a pleasure. 15. For Melanie to get into Norwich University was her one aim in life.

4. Answer the following questions. Give a complete answer. Use a for-to-Infinitive construction as subject.

Model: *What is it unusual for you to do in the evening? – It's unusual for me to stay at home just reading something.*

1. What is it usual for you to do on Saturday night? 2. Where is it common for you to go on Sunday? 3. How is it more pleasant for you to watch TV: sitting in an arm-chair or lying on the sofa? 4. How is it safe for you to come home late: alone or with a friend? 5. How is it good (dangerous) for you to travel? 6. What actor is it always a pleasure for you to see on the stage (on TV)? 7. What can it be a shock for you to see? 8. What is it a waste of time for you to do? 9. Who may it be a surprise for you to meet in your town? 10. What may it be a misfortune for you to miss? 11. What will it be a treat for you to watch? 12. Where would it be good for you to go on holidays? 13. What is it a must for you to do in the morning/evening? 14. Where is it good for you to spend your vacation? 15. What music is it always a pleasure for you to listen to? 16. What language is it a must for you to study? 17. What country is it a dream for you to visit?

5. Translate the sentences into English. Use a for-to-Infinitive construction as subject.

1. Мені легко з нею. Вона чуйна і м'яка людина. 2. Нам складно пояснити вам, як потрібно поводитися. 3. Для Стіва тільки задоволення сходити з тобою в музей. 4. Гаррі важко зрозуміти, чому вона не хоче поїхати на пікнік. 5. Для них не повірити тобі - це засмутити тебе. 6. Нам небажано переривати стосунки з ними, бо ми знаємо їх сто років. 7. Лорі легко вивчати англійську. Вона здібна до мов. 8. Джеррі нічого не варто проконтролювати, як вони виконують свої зобов'язання. 9. Зробити їй комплімент означає для нього лестити їй. 10. Для Артура приїхати на годину пізніше означає більше ніколи не побачити її. 11. Для нього досягти чого-небудь ніколи не буває проблемою. Принаймні, йому так здається. 12. Кейт дуже важливо купити нові окуляри. Вона не може читати в старих. 13. Для неї так природно не реагувати на такі слова.

6. Underline the for-to-Infinitive construction used as predicative. Translate the sentences.

Model: *This work is for you to do. – Цю роботу треба зробити Вам.*

1. The main problem is for her to believe that he won't come back. 2. This house is just for you to see. 3. The first thing was for the child to be taken to the doctor. 4. The best thing was for the Robinsons not to get their son to sell his car. 5. The worst offer was for Andrew to leave his family and go abroad to work for that company. 6. The hardest problem was for the poor family to pay the rent. 7. The easiest way out is for John not to stay at a hotel but to rent a furnished room. 8. This paper is for you to type and send to our partner. 9. The linen is for Sandy to wash or to take to the laundry. 10. The book is for Henry to give back to Mike. 11. The video is for you to watch if you like.

7. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the for-to-Infinitive construction as predicative.

1. Для нього найкраще було б не ходити до неї і не травмувати її. 2. Головне - їй зрозуміти, що впадати у відчай не слід. 3. Найрозумніше для дитини - не дивитися вульгарні фільми і не читати порожні книжки. 4. Основна проблема - щоб вона знайшла їй відповідні ліки. 5. Найгірше для них - купити новий будинок і не мати можливості жити в ньому. 6. Найнебажаніше для Джека - отримати зарплату меншу, ніж він розраховував. 7. Найцікавіше для мене - з'їздити в Англію і подивитися всі головні визначні пам'ятки. 8. Найпростіше для Вас - не сперечатися з ними, а прийняти все, як є. 9. Найкраще для вас - погодитися грати цю роль. 10. Головне для вас - віддати йому борг і більше ніколи не звертатися до нього.

8. Underline the for-to-Infinitive construction used as complex object. Translate the sentences.

Model: *She doesn't care for them to come. Їй неважно, приедут ли они. (Их визит ее не волнует)*

1. I don't care for you to agree with me. 2. She was anxious for him to marry Lady Gordon's daughter. 3. We waited for the teacher to come and start the exam. 4. She didn't care for her friends to approve of her decision. 5. Roy was anxious for his family to arrive as he missed them a lot. 6. Barbara waited for Larry to find a way out for both of them. 7. They usually don't care for their children to go to bed in time.

9. Translate the sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the for-to-Infinitive construction as complex object.

1. Він дуже хоче, щоб його син одружився і зробив хорошу кар'єру. 2. Їй байдуже, чи схвалюєте ви її вибір. 3. Ми чекали, що вони куплять новий телевізор, а нам віддадуть старий. 4. Мене не хвилює, що вони їдуть. 5. Я дуже хочу, щоб мій фільм побачили за кордоном і оцінили. 6. Ми чекали, що шеф зателефонує вранці, але марно. 7. Девід дуже хоче, щоб його дружина знайшла хорошу роботу.

10. Underline the for-to-Infinitive construction used as attribute and the noun it modifies.

1. There's nothing for us to talk about. 2. We have very little for them to give. 3. That was the last thing for her to say. 4. There was no time for them to pack the things. 5. There was nothing for the child to fear. 6. Unfortunately, I have nothing for you to drink. We've run out of wine. 7. There's nothing for you to admire here. 8. There's something for you to make fun of. 9. Here's a very interesting item for you to read. 10. This is not the right girl for you to marry. 11. That's a nice place for us to have a good time at. 12. I've found a good job for you to earn enough money.

11. Paraphrase the sentences using the for-to-Infinitive construction as attribute.

Model: *Here's the book which you can read before going to bed. – Here's the book for you to read before going to bed.*

1. You should find somebody who you could look after in order to get some money. 2. We need a place where we could spend our holiday. 3. That's the room where he can work. 4. Here are the articles that you should look through and say what you think of them. 5. He is just the child you have to worry about. 6. That's not a question you can answer. 7. This is one of the problems you'll have to solve before having a talk with her. 8. Here are the instructions you have to follow. 9. He will always find somebody he may have a talk with. 10. That was a good chance for the family as they could move in.

12. Translate the sentences into English using the for-to-Infinitive construction as attribute.

1. Немає нікого, кого він міг би полюбити і, нарешті, знайти своє сімейне щастя. 2. Я принесла книжку, яку ти можеш почитати в дорозі, коли поїдеш до Криму. 3. Ось бутерброди, щоб ти перекусив на роботі. 4. Постарайся знайти місце, де ти можеш усамітнитися і попрацювати. 5. Я купив тобі подарунок, який принесе тобі радість. 6. Це та проблема, на яку ви повинні звернути особливу увагу. 7. Це якраз та людина, на яку ти можеш покластися. 8. Ось будинок, у якому ти почуватимешся зручно. 9. Він склав план, який ми маємо обговорити найближчим часом. 10. Це лише привід, яким ви можете скористатися, щоб не ходити на нараду. 11. Ось шанс для вас поговорити з ними. 12. Тут немає нічого, що ми могли б купити їй на день народження. 13. Ось гарний привід для нас відвідати їх. 14. батько купив комп'ютер, на якому син може розв'язувати шахові задачі.

13. Underline the for-to-Infinitive construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose. Translate the sentences.

1. She didn't say a word for them to understand that she agreed. 2. We did everything for him to be saved. 3. He has to wake me up very early for me to arrive at work in time. 4. Mary and Angela came into the room for their dad to give them some pocket money. 5. He brought the novel for the editor to read. 6. My husband bought a car for me to go to the country whenever I wish. 7. When my child is asleep we never talk in a loud voice for him not to wake up. 8. Dennis phoned her from time to time for her not to say that he had left her. 9. She bought some pictures for us to decorate the flat. 10. Sally switched on the TV for Dick to relax a bit. 11. Eddy advised Sally to take a taxi for her to get to the club as she was late. 12. She put on her bright evening dress for him to notice her at once.

14. Paraphrase the sentences using the for-to-Infinitive construction as adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: *He bought her a soft and most comfortable armchair so that she could relax. – He bought a soft and most comfortable armchair for her to relax.*

1. He took the girl friend to his friends' so that they could tell him what they thought of her as his partner. 2. Felix was sincere and revealed all his secrets so that we could understand that he didn't want to conceal anything. 3. The film producer gave his instructions to the actors so that they didn't make any mistake. 4. Do it so that they could calm down. 5. Don't cry so that they shouldn't feel that you are upset. 6. Choose the way you like so that you might be sure that was your own choice. 7. Open the window so that he could get a breath of fresh air. 8. Shut the door so that nobody could hear us. 9. Let's buy a small television so that the children could watch it when they are alone. 10. Jane bought some apples, flour, sugar and a bottle of milk that her mother could make an apple pie. 11. She was very careful in choosing the right words so that he did not throw a fit. 12. So many people had been exposed to radiation in that region that the doctors did their best that they could recover.

15. Underline the for-to-Infinitive construction used as adverbial modifier of result/consequence. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

Model: *She walked too quickly/slowly enough for me to keep up with her. Она шла слишком быстро, чтобы я мог поспевать за ней / достаточно медленно, чтобы я мог догнать ее.*

1. They had done enough for us to live and respect them. 2. The book is too thick for me to read it on the train. 3. The house is spacious enough for such a family to live in. 4. Our son is too little for us to leave him alone. 5. He was angry enough for his wife to understand that it was impossible to go on talking with him. 6. The problem was too serious for us to solve in haste. 7. The traffic was heavy enough for us not to drive but to go by the underground. 8. We got up early enough for us not to miss the first train. 9. She is too silly for them to hope that she can find a way out herself. 10. The wind was strong enough for the children not to go and have a

swim. 11. She talked too fast for us to understand every word. 12. The idea was interesting enough for them to be inspired by it.

16. Paraphrase the sentences using a for-to-Infinitive construction as adverbial modifier of result/consequence.

Model: *She is big enough and we can rely upon her. – She is big enough for us to rely upon her.*

1. His father is rather rich and Dick can buy not only a car but a post as well. 2. My friend is too light-minded and you'd better not ask her for help. 3. Freddy can run so fast that you shouldn't compete with him. 4. Lucy was quite clever and they could trust her. 5. Simon is very old and his children can't let him go abroad alone. 6. Rachel's French is very bad and you shouldn't ask her to interpret. 7. Val can swim rather well and you can invite him to take part in the local sports competitions. 8. Martha's house is pretty large and they can stay with her. 9. The garden is very small and your father can't plant all these trees there. 10. The poem is too long and Mike can't learn it by heart. 11. His voice was pretty low and we can hardly hear what he said. 12. This paper is rather dull and I never subscribe to it.

17. Use a for-to-Infinitive construction after too or enough.

Model: *We couldn't find the pin in the hay-stack. (small) – The pin was too small for us to find in the hay-stack.*

The place is quiet. We can have a rest here. – The place is quiet enough for us to have a rest.

1. I can't read the sign. (1. high 2. not big enough) 2. Grace couldn't reach the top shelf. (high) 3. We can't understand this text. (difficult) 4. Everyone could hear the music. (loud enough) 5. The sea was cold. They couldn't swim. 6. The table is small. We can't all sit round it. 7. The table is big. All of us can sit around it. 8. We couldn't understand the guide. He wasn't speaking loudly. 9. The boys couldn't lift the piano. (heavy)

18. Translate the sentences into English. Use a for-to-Infinitive construction as an adverbial modifier of purpose and result.

1. Вона прибрала квартиру, щоб не робити це в неділю. 2. Дитина занадто мала, щоб ви дозволяли їй дивитися такі передачі. 3. Вентилятор занадто маленький, щоб ви могли провітрювати таку велику кімнату. 4. День досить теплий, щоб нам поїхати скупатися. 5. Відійди, щоб я міг посунути стіл. 6. Холодильник занадто малий, щоб вам використовувати його на дачі. 7. Візьми книгу в бібліотеці, щоб мені підготуватися до семінару. 8. Купи побільше продуктів, щоб бабусі не ходити в магазин щодня. 9. Ми вирішили про нього піклуватися, щоб його дружина була спокійна. 10. Будинок побудували, щоб сім'ї військових могли отримати квартири. 11. Джек занадто невірноважений, щоб ми довірили йому цю важливу справу.

19. Paraphrase the following sentences. Use a for-to-Infinitive construction.

Model: *Have you got any coffee that I can drink? – Have you got any coffee for me to drink? We're eager that the holidays should begin. – We're eager for the holidays to begin.*

1. The milk is so hot that the baby can't drink it. 2. We're waiting for the arrival of the manager. 3. I've brought you some magazines that you could read them on the train. 4. He opened the door that she could enter the room. 5. Isn't there anything I can eat? 6. The suitcase is so heavy that I can't take it upstairs. 7. We'll have to go by train if we are to come on time. – It will be necessary ... 8. They were waiting until the door opened. 9. It's time you told me everything. 10. The station master raised his flag and the train could start. 11. Watching the performance was a real pleasure for her. – It was a real pleasure ... 12. We're waiting for the arrival of the

train. 13. We had to walk all the way. – It was necessary ... 14. I took some lessons but they didn't help much. – It was useless ... 15. The shoes are too old fashioned. You can't wear them. 16. The river was so overflown that we couldn't cross it. 17. Please, draw the curtains aside, so that the sun could shine in. 18. Shall we go on? It seems useless. 19. The problem is too personal. We can't discuss it in public. 20. I've got my picture here so that you may look at it.

REVISION

1. Point out

- a) a single Infinitive,
- b) an Infinitive phrase,
- c) an Infinitive construction

Model:

- a) Now I'd like to go. / To cry is useless.
- b) We'd like to go to the cinema. / It's pretty difficult to make a film after this novel.
- c) I'd like you to join me. / For him to cook something is next to impossible.

1. She revised the rules to get prepared for the test. 2. The room is easy to decorate. 3. The camera is too expensive for us to buy. 4. There's nobody for her to rely upon. 5. I bought some flour for you to make a cake. 6. The question was difficult to answer immediately. 7. He is experienced enough to give you advice. 8. He came here to help. 9. He will find somebody to keep him company. 10. The hotel was difficult for us to find. 11. Sid is too young to get married. 12. I've got lots of wonderful CD-s to listen to.

2. Point out an Infinitive construction and state its function.

1. The committee are supposed to have a meeting next week. 2. She will make him put on his overcoat. 3. The story is too funny for me to believe you. 4. Bill is said to have married Jane. 5. The clerk reported the paper to have been signed. 6. I counted on her to come on time. 7. Buy a bike for her to keep fit. 8. It's necessary for your children not to miss their classes. 9. She saw her child play in the garden. 10. The coach was reported to start at 5 p.m. 11. Here are the articles for you to copy. 12. The team is likely to lose the game. 13. I can't say I want you to buy a car. 14. She was anxious for him to go to University. 15. They are sure to book the seats for all of us. 16. She brought the scissors for me to cut her hair. 17. The boy was seen to post the letter. 18. I saw Bernard and his son play chess in the garden. 19. This dictionary is for you to translate the poem.

3. Put *to* before the infinitive wherever necessary.

1. I had rather _ talk to her alone. 2. She could not _ bear _ let Davidson out of her sight. 3. How pleasant it would be _ walk out alone, first along the river and then through the park! 4. I saw a lizard _ run over the crag. 5. He watched her _ ring the bell. 6. The matter must _ be delayed a few days longer. 7. He seems _ want _ let me _ decide for myself. 8. "Come and help me _ do some shopping," he said. "I need _ buy some presents at once." 9. Justine went to the kitchen and watched Waldo _ come along the path to the side door. 10. "I don't think we need _ go into all that," he said at last. 11. "Understand," he said, "once and for all, I won't have you _ say this sort of things." 12. He felt a choke _ rise in his own throat. 13. He begged her not _ go. 14. Irene's lips moved; she seemed _ be saying: "Where shall I _ go?" 15. It is the first chance I've had _ really contribute to the expenses here. 16. Everyone came out of the house _ admire the new car. 17. A few amber clouds floated in the sky, without a breath of air _ move them. 18. He stood by the creek and heard it _ ripple over the stones. 19. He sat down, and made me _ sit beside him. 20. "I'd better _ get there early," said Roy, "I can _ look after myself."

4. State the syntactical function of the infinitive, the infinitive phrase or the infinitive construction.

1. To go far away and quickly was the only thing to do. 2. I felt Matty touch me on the shoulder. 3. It was easy to see that each minute Mouldy and Ripston grew more and more alarmed at my condition. 4. She was going to the station with him, to drive the car back. 5. "I am sorry to have heard bad news of Mr. Barkis," said I. 6. There is no time to lose. 7. I should like to have known him. 8. I believe you to be writing letters in the morning room. 9. He rose with alacrity, and began to select books for me from his shelves. 10. She had turned her head to speak to her boy. 11. It was light enough to take the short cut, and she climbed the first stile into the field path. 12. I have no one in the world to go to. Do not send me away! 13. She turned her head, he saw her hand make a little flitting gesture. 14. And she had always and consistently urged him to get a job. 15. He wanted to tell her of the incident, longed suddenly to end their period of strife. 16. Annie got up to clear the table. 17. She was the first to speak. 18. I was too much disturbed to go to bed myself. 19. Minny made Sarah sit in the one comfortable chair close to the fire. 20. I used to see you looking at flowers, and trees, and those ducks. 21. I had some questions to ask him. 22. He was the last man in the world to be troubled by any such considerations. 23. Alice didn't seem to have heard me. 24. The Gadfly was difficult to convince. 25. We understand your income to be two thousand pounds. 26. This unexpected offer of shelter was too tempting to be resisted. 27. Can I give you anything to eat or to drink? 28. I heard Mounteney whisper to Martin: to my astonishment he seemed to be asking what was the matter with me. 29. To surprise them would be better. 30. The time for the Committee meeting had been set for seven o'clock in the evening, in order to accommodate Lyman. 31. The old gardener had finished his morning job and came with a little basket to feed the doves. 32. Paper is said to have been invented in China. 33. She refused to answer him. 34. The tower seemed to rock in the wind.

5. Use the verbs in brackets in the required form.

1. I hate (to bother) you, but the students are still waiting (to give) books for their work. 2. He seized every opportunity (to appear) in public: he was so anxious (to talk) about. 3. Is there anything else (to tell) her? I believe she deserves (to know) the state of her sick brother. 4. He began writing books not because he wanted (to earn) a living. He wanted (to read) and not (to forget). 5. I consider myself lucky (to be) to that famous exhibition and (to see) so many wonderful paintings. 6. He seems (to know) French very well: he is said (to spend) his youth in Paris. 7. The enemy army was reported (to overthrow) the defence lines and (to advance) towards the suburbs of the city. 8. The woman pretended (to read) and (not to hear) the bell. 9. You seem (to look) for trouble. 10. It seemed (to snow) heavily since early morning: the ground was covered with a deep layer of snow. 11. They seemed (to quarrel): I could hear angry voices from behind the door. 12. Perhaps it would upset her (to tell) the truth of the matter. 13. They are supposed (to work) at the problem for the last two months. 14. The only sound (to hear) was the snoring of grandfather in the bedroom. 15. Her ring was believed (to lose) until she happened (to find) it during the general cleaning. It turned out (to drop) between the sofa and the wall. 16. They seemed (to wait) for ages.

6. Translate into English.

1. Я радий, що розповів вам правду. 2. Я радий, що мені розповіли правду. 3. Я хочу познайомити вас із моїм братом. 4. Я хочу, щоб мене познайомили з вашим братом. 5. Я радий, що зустрів її на станції. 6. Я радий, що мене зустріли на станції. 7. Ми дуже щасливі, що запросили його сюди. 8. Ми дуже щасливі, що нас запросили на вечір. 9. Діти люблять, коли їм читають. 10. Я не мав наміру зупинятися на цій станції. 11. Я не очікував, що мене зупинять. 12. Я шкодую, що заподіяв вам стільки занепокоєння. 13. Він буде щасливий відвідати цю знамениту картинну галерею. 14. Він був щасливий, що відвідав цю знамениту картинну галерею. 15. Він не виносить, коли йому брешуть. 16. Я згадав, що вже зустрічав це слово в якійсь книзі.

7. Translate into English.

1. Мені дуже шкода, що я пропустив цю цікаву лекцію. 2. Вона щаслива, що чула концерт відомого італійського диригента. 3. Вона рада, що була присутня на лекції. 4. Він дуже задоволений, що закінчив свою книгу. 5. Їм пощастило, що вони побачили цей прекрасний парк у ясний сонячний день. 6. Наші спортсмени пишаються тим, що виграли кубок. 7. Він попросив, щоб його проводили до актової зали. 8. Я тільки хочу, щоб мені дозволили допомогти вам. 9. Я був вдячний, що мені дали кімнату з великим вікном. 10. Він був щасливий, що повернувся додому. 11. Він був щасливий, що знову вдома. 12. Я шкодую, що перервав вас. 13. Я шкодую, що не застала вас удома. 14. Я рада, що дала вам потрібні відомості. 15. Джейн була щаслива, що їде від місіс Рід. 16. Рочестер був радий познайомитися з Джейн. 17. Рочестер був радий, що познайомився з Джейн.

8. Translate into English using Infinitive for- and of-phrases

1. Мені було важко їх переконати. 2. Хвороба завадила йому скористатися цією можливістю. 3. Було б краще, якби йому нічого не говорили. 4. Його присутність дозволила мені уникнути сварки. 5. Люсі бачила, що я був дуже стурбований тим, щоб вона справила гарне враження. 6. Виявилось, що припинити всі ці чутки не так-то просто. 7. Він шукав спокійне місце, де б його сім'я могла відпочити. 8. Ніхто з нас нічого не міг би зробити в цій ситуації. 9. Це була зручна для неї нагода поговорити з ним наодинці. 10. Я попросив дозволу, щоб Том пожив у нас ще тиждень. 11. Дивно, що він написав таку статтю. 12. Для мене велика честь познайомитися з такою людиною, як Джон Бейлі. 13. Йому принесло задоволення все підготувати до їхнього приїзду. 14. Їм було б шкода витратити стільки зусиль даремно. 15. Дуже завбачливо з вашого боку, що ви прийшли сьогодні. 16. Ми всі чекали, коли прийде лист. 17. Просто дивно, як це Ден знайшов вас. 18. Мені дуже хотілося, щоб він скоріше взявся за роботу. 19. Для мене було полегшенням виїхати з дому. 20. Їм було б зручно не втягувати його в цю справу. 21. Йому коштувало великих зусиль зателефонувати їй. 22. дуже мило з його боку, що він цікавиться моїми справами. 23. Я щільно зачинив двері, щоб нам ніхто не заважав. 24. Він жестом показав, щоб я вийшов.

9. Use the correct form of the verb.

1. Her remark made everybody (feel) uncomfortable. 2. They got the manager (sign) the contract. 3. She was made (give up) smoking. 4. They got him (sell) the car. 5. Let him (do) the task himself. 6. He had a fireplace (install) in the corner of the sitting room. 7. She bought a nice dress but she had to get the sleeves (shorten). 8. The professor let Mike (leave) the room. 9. They were made (hand) in their reports on Thursday. 10. He let me (decide) for myself. 11. They had him (contribute) to expenses. 12. The teacher got the pupils (learn) the poem by heart. 13. He took a lot of photos during his holiday and got them (develop). 14. The robber had the teller (open) the safe. 15. The opposition got the government (decrease) prices. 16. Don't let them (attend) the conference. 17. They were made (go) to the police station. 18. He got the chairman (make) an announcement. 19. She made him (forget) the incident. 20. Do you let your children (watch) TV till late at night? 21. I got my son (shave) his moustache. 22. Let your children (have) tastes in music different from yours.

3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Почнемо з того, що я ніколи не був знайомий із ним. 2. Ви достатньо його знаєте, щоб рекомендувати? 3. Цього тижня в мене багато справ, які я маю зробити. 4. Не давайте йому розмовляти з ув'язненими. 5. Чи вважаєте ви, що він досвідчений лікар? 6. Я чув, що про нього говорили на останніх зборах. 7. У цьому семестрі навряд чи будуть якісь зміни в розкладі. 8. Валіза була занадто важкою, щоб вона могла нести її. 9. Я бачив, як він підійшов до них і сказав щось. 10. Мені дуже шкода. Я прийшов, щоб повідомити вам погану новину. 11. На довершення всього, вона розбила улюблену чашку мами. 12. Вона

знає англійську мову досить добре, щоб поїхати без перекладача. 13. Вона знала, що не винна, їй нічого було боятися. 14. Не дозволяйте дітям купатися. Вода дуже холодна. 15. Я думаю, що це питання має велике значення. 16. Я бачив, що він дуже засмучений. 17. Кажуть, що ця будівля була побудована в XVII столітті. 18. Здається малоімовірним, що вони дійдуть згоди. 19. Він не очікував, що його запитують про це. 20. Я бачив, як темні хмари вкрили небо, і чув, що здійнявся вітер.

THE SPLIT INFINITIVE

If there is an adverb modifying the infinitive, it is usually placed after the infinitive, or after the object, if there is one:

e.g. He tried to leave quietly.

We will have to do it immediately.

However, it is now becoming increasingly common to put the adverb between the infinitive and the particle *to*:

e.g. She is too honest to even think of that.

He promised to really try.

This phenomenon is called the split infinitive. There are linguists who disapprove of this use, which they consider incorrect. In general, it is safer not to split the infinitive, and in many cases we can avoid it:

e.g. He wanted them to quickly make up their minds (= > 'He wanted them to make up their minds quickly').

Nevertheless, there are sentences in which the split infinitive is the only possibility, for otherwise the meaning would be changed:

e.g. Would you tell them to kindly stop it.

THE GERUND

The Gerund is a non-finite form of the verb which names a process or an action. It is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb.

Like all the other verbals the gerund has a double nature, that is, it has *verbal* and *nominal* properties, it combines the features of the verb with those of the noun.

The gerund demonstrates its verbal nature by serving as a predicative in compound nominal predicates and as part of compound verbal aspect predicates.

1. The compound nominal predicate always consists of a linking verb (the verb *to be* or other link verbs with different meanings, e.g., *to become, to get, to continue, to grow, to turn, etc.*) and a predicative.

E.g.: His hobby is collecting cars.

2. The compound verbal aspect predicate expresses the beginning, repetition, duration or cessation of the action denoted by the gerund.

E.g.: She started asking me questions.

They kept on chatting.

The gerund exhibits its nominal nature through syntactic functions commonly associated with nouns, such as serving as a subject, object, attribute, or adverbial modifier.

In the sentence the gerund can function in the same way as the noun, so it may function as

1) a subject

e.g. Riding a bicycle is my favourite pastime.

2) a predicative

e.g. His hobby is collecting stamps.

3) an object (direct object or prepositional object)

Note: As a direct object, the gerund is used after the following verbs: *to admit, to excuse, to postpone, to risk, to approach, to fancy, to practice, to suggest, to avoid, to imagine, to put off, to understand, to deny, to mention, to recollect, can't help, to detest, to mind, to resent, can't stand, to enjoy, to miss, to resist, etc.*

e.g. Avoid using very long sentences. Do you fancy eating out?

Note: As a prepositional object, the gerund is used after the following verb phrases: to accuse of, to agree to, to approve of, to look forward to, to be / get used to, to be accustomed to, what's the use of, to feel like, to look like, to persist in, to suspect of, to prevent from, to burst out, to object to, to insist on, to keep on, to carry on, to give up the idea of, to miss the opportunity of, there is no point in, have difficulty in, get round to, and some others.

E.g.: *I'm looking forward to seeing you. I don't feel like running.*

Note: As a prepositional object, the gerund is used after the following predicative word-groups (with or without a preposition): to be worth, to be surprised at, to be astonished at, to be sure of, to be proud of, to be (dis-)pleased at, to be guilty of, to be fond of, to be capable of, to be busy in, to be aware of.

E.g.: *The film is worth seeing.*

4) an attribute

In this function the gerund is always preceded by a preposition and mainly modifies abstract nouns.
e.g. She had the impression of being deceived.

There's a chance of seeing him again.

5) an adverbial modifier

In this function the gerund is always preceded by a preposition. It is used in the functions of the adverbial modifier of time, manner, attendant circumstances, cause, condition, purpose and concession.

a) Time: the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *after, before, on / upon, in, at* or *since*.

e.g. *I'll give you a lift before driving home.*

b) Manner: the gerund is used with the prepositions *by, without* and *in*.

e.g. *They were sitting without making a sound.*

c) Attendant circumstances: the gerund is preceded by the preposition *without*.

e.g. *They were walking without realizing that they were followed.*

d) Purpose: the gerund is chiefly used with the preposition *for*.

E.g.: *They took her to hospital for examining.*

e) Condition: the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, but for, in case of*.

E.g.: *He has no right to come without being invited.*

f) Cause (reason): the gerund is used with the prepositions *for, for fear of, from, owing to, because of, on account of* and *through*.

E.g.: *I couldn't speak for laughing.*

g) Concession: the gerund is preceded by the preposition *in spite of*.

E.g.: *In spite of being busy, he came to visit her.*

In the sentence the gerund can perform any syntactical function typical of a noun. When used like a noun it may function

a) alone (a single gerund)

e.g. I like dancing.

But the single gerund occurs very seldom.

b) as a headword of a gerundial phrase

e.g. I like playing the piano.

c) as part of a gerundial construction.

e.g. I like Ann's playing the piano.

The morphological categories of the gerund

They also manifest the verbal character of the gerund. They are 1) the category of voice for transitive verbs and 2) the category of perfect. There are four forms of the gerund for transitive verbs and two forms for intransitive verbs:

Indefinite Active Gerund: reading

e.g. I like **reading**.

Perfect Active Gerund: having read

e.g. He admitted **having stolen the ring**.

Indefinite Passive Gerund: being read

e.g. She insisted on **being treated** with respect.

Perfect Passive Gerund: having been read

e.g. He recalled **having been taken** for a foreigner once.

1. The category of voice of the gerund has the same meaning as in the corresponding finite verb forms.

8. The worst part was knowing you wouldn't come. 9. Seeing the man like that was enough revenge for her. 10. Driving with Maggie was always a silent business. 11. Esther couldn't help thinking wistfully of her bedtime cup of tea. 12. That woman likes sticking needles into me. 13. Your painting the house now is a waste of time.

2. Comment on the form of the gerund using the given models.

MODEL 1: *writing* – It is a non-perfect active gerund.

MODEL 2: *being written* – It is a non-perfect passive gerund.

MODEL 3: *having written* – It is a perfect active gerund.

MODEL 4: *having been written* – It is a perfect passive gerund.

A	B	C
1. having done	1. shaving	1. having been driven
2. moving	2. having burnt	2. being offered
3. being closed	3. having been planned	3. helping
4. having been read	4. being treated	4. having drawn
5. thinking	5. listening	5. being made
6. being taken	6. having joined	6. reaching
7. telling	7. being used	7. having heard
8. being interrupted	8. having been mentioned	8. selling

3. Give all the possible gerundial forms of the following verbs.

A. Transitive verbs: test, spend, finish, check, type, make;

B. Intransitive verbs: think, ski, smile, skate, swim, speak.

4. Use the appropriate form of the gerund of the verbs in brackets.

1. I prefer (drive) to (drive). 2. Stop (argue) and start (work). 3. He liked neither (read) nor (read) aloud to. 4. Why do you avoid (see) me? 5. He tried to avoid (see). 6. I suggest (hold) another meeting next week. 7. On (read) her letter he had once more a feeling of disappointment. 8. After (read) this article you will give up (smoke). 9. I hate (borrow) money. 10. I don't feel like (work); what about (go) to a disco instead? 11. He insists on (send) there instead of me. 12. We insist on (send) him there at once. 13. She likes (interrupt) her mother but she hates (interrupt). 14. He is used to (treat) his parents with respect and they like (treat) in that way. 15. Which is better? (leave) a large legacy to someone or (leave) without any? 16. He hates (remind) people of their duties or (remind) of his. 17. The equipment must go through a number of tests before (install). 18. Ralph likes (talk) down to his pals but he is against (talk) to in that way. 19. The set of short stories is worth (read). 20. He liked to do things without (disturb) anyone or (disturb). 21. The boy was afraid of (punish) and hid himself. 22. I really regret (hurt) you. 23. The floor wants (polish). 24. The top-student deserved (get) the prize. 25. She dreams of (invite) to the party. 26. He stopped for a moment and then went on (speak). 27. She showed no sign of (impress). 28. The project required (improve). 29. Tracy opened the door without (knock) at it. 30. She finds the film worth (see). 31. I remember (take) to London when I was a very small child. 32. She denied (see) me at the concert though I'm sure I saw her in the stalls. 33. There is very little hope of the work (do) in time. 34. I strongly suspect Gerald of (know) all about it beforehand, though he swears he didn't. 35. I sat on the doorstep thinking over my chances of (escape) from home. 36. (watch) a cowboy film is a pleasure for any boy. 37. On (take) to hospital, she was examined by the surgeon. 38. It's no use (argue) about tastes. 39. You can improve the taste of meat by (pepper) it. 40. I want to thank her for (look) after the children while I was out. 41. The jeans want (shorten).

The Gerundial Constructions

A *gerundial construction* is a syntactical unit consisting of a nominal element (a noun or a pronoun) and a verbal element (a gerund). The gerund is in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun, that is in the construction the gerund denotes an action performed by the person or non-person expressed by the nominal element. The relations between the elements of the construction resemble those between the subject and the predicate of the sentence, that's why the gerundial construction is used when the doer of the action of the gerund doesn't coincide with the subject of the sentence.

The nominal element of the construction can be expressed by

a noun in the genitive case or a possessive pronoun denoting a living being

a) a noun in the genitive case or a possessive pronoun denoting a living being.

e.g. We are looking forward to Peter's coming back. They insisted on my staying with them.

b) a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case. There is a growing tendency, especially in informal speech, to use a noun in the common case and a pronoun in the objective case to denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund.

e.g. She doesn't approve of her son (him) staying out late at night.

Note: The genitive case of the noun is impossible

1) when the nominal element consists of two or more nouns;

e.g. We insist on the rich and poor being treated alike.

2) if the noun has a post-modifying attribute.

e.g. I can't think of a man of talent composing such music.

c) a noun in the common case or a possessive pronoun if the nominal element denotes a lifeless thing.

e.g. The carrying out of these plans depends on the documents being signed in time.

He insisted on its being delivered without delay.

d) a pronoun which has no category of case (all, this, that, both, each, something)

e.g. I couldn't deny both of them having made a reasonable excuse. She was responsible for this being done properly.

The gerundial constructions perform the following functions:

1. Subject which is expressed by the Subjective Gerundial constructions.

E.g.: His being sent abroad was a surprise to everybody. Your being so indifferent irritates me a great deal.

2. Object which is expressed by the Objective Gerundial construction.

E.g.: We thought of their improving methods of production.

1. Complete the following sentences using a gerundial construction.

1. Do you think she'll approve of (you, to tell) me this. 2. Uncle Julius insists on (I, to come) to keep him company. 3. I remember (he, to ask for) that book last Monday. 4. He doesn't mind (his daughter, to go) to the cinema once a week. 5. It is difficult to stop (George, to talk) once he begins. 6. This change of the timetable will mean (we, to leave) much later every day. 7. I imagine (he, to lose) all his savings. 8. I remember in school days he couldn't answer the teacher's questions without (I, to prompt) him. 9. I can't understand (they, to forget) to phone us. 10. I was surprised at (Sue, to forget) to come to the meeting. 11. Would you mind (she, to join) us? 12. I'll have to insist on (he, not to disturb) us during the lesson. 13. It won't be any use (you, to try) to borrow any more money. 14. Excuse (I, to keep) you waiting. 15. We are excited about (Marry, to win) a scholarship. 16. I couldn't understand (they, not to want) to go. 17. The neighbours are displeased at (she, to invite) her friends every day. 18. It won't do any good (you, to get) all worked up.

Exercise 2. Make one sentence out of two by using a gerundial construction.

Model: He will be sent abroad. The boss insists on it. – The boss insists on his being sent abroad.

1. We talked about him behind his back. The boy resented that fact. 2. Ann borrowed Sally's clothes without asking her first. Sally complained about that fact. 3. They ran away to get married. That fact shocked everyone. 4. The programmer is always on time with his work. You may rely on him. 5. Helen is here to answer our questions about the company's new insurance plan. We should take advantage of that fact. 6. Students must write their corrections carefully. The teacher insists on it. 7. Did you give me back the book I lent you? I can't remember it. 8. I'm really surprised. The concert was over so early. 9. You took the time to help us. We greatly appreciate that fact. 10. You don't want to do it. I don't understand that fact. 11. The children are left at home alone. I disapprove of it; they are too small. 12. They were invited to the disco. I've heard about it. 13. I'm sure he asked you not to phone after 11 p.m. Have you forgotten it? 14. I beat him at tennis, and he wasn't pleased at all. He hated it. 15. Our teacher is displeased. This student always does his exercises badly. 16. The children are making such a noise. Can't you stop it? 17. Are you not surprised? Your friend was introduced to our greatest singer. 18. We will spend our holidays abroad. My husband insists on it. 19. He decided to give up sports. I couldn't understand it. 20. We were pleased. He was invited to take part in the conference.

5. Translate the following sentences into English

1. Те, що ваші діти дивляться фільми жахів, не може вас не турбувати. 2. Ви не заперечуєте, якщо вікно залишити відчиненим? 3. Не сподівайся на те, що я допоможу тобі з цією роботою. 4. Він засмутився при думці, що Ден поїде від них. 5. Я боявся, як би Джон не потрапив в аварію. 6. Вона не усвідомлює, що її чоловікові загрожує небезпека. 7. Поліцейський здивувався, що ув'язнений визнав свою провину. 8. Ви не будете проти, якщо я відчиню двері? 9. Уяви собі, їй хотілося знати, що його турбує. 10. Вона наполягає на тому, щоб йому дозволили взяти участь у змаганнях. 11. Будь ласка, вибач мене за те, що я тобі не писав. 12. Усе залежить від того, чи виграють вони цей матч. 13. Він наполіг на тому, щоб Анну негайно запросили сюди. 14. Я не нарікаю на нього за те, що він вліз у цю справу. 15. Він ніколи не пробачить тобі, що ти його підвів. 16. Я не заперечую проти того, щоб ви вирушили до Англії. 17. Ви згадали, що минулого року він був у лікарні. 18. вибачте, що перериваю вас. 19. Ми не можемо розраховувати на те, що погода буде гарна. 20. Ви пам'ятаєте, я вам казала, що мій чоловік лікар.

THE GERUND AS A SUBJECT

The gerund as subject occupies the initial position in the sentence.
e.g. Knowing everything isn't always good.

However, the gerund-subject may stand in postposition in sentences opening with the introductory subject *it* after the predicates expressed by such phrases as *to be (of) no use (no good, useless)*, *to make all the (no) difference*, *to be a waste of time*, etc., and also with the construction *there is* with the formal subject *there*. In the latter case the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun *no*.

e.g. It is of no use trying to get in touch with her.

It makes no difference having a talk with him or sending him a letter. Of course, I'm scared. There's no denying that.

1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as subject. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. It is no use crying over spilt milk. 2. Working in the lab helps you to learn English better. 3. Inviting people to tea or coffee instead of dinner is a way of saving money. 4. There is no denying the fact. 5. It makes all the difference getting some extra money. 6. It was no good taking the little darling up to town, she got only tired. 7. Reading French is easier than speaking it. 8. It makes no difference going there by bus or by taxi. 9. It's a waste of money buying

things you don't need. 10. There is no accounting for his bad mood. 11. Marrying somebody for his looks is not reasonable. 12. It was useless having a date with him. 13. It is awfully hard work doing nothing. 14. Talking mends no holes. 15. Being impolite is totally alien to the British character. 16. There was no arguing with my parents. 17. Going in for sports did her a lot of good. 18. For a woman, being needed is everything in life.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use the gerund-subject in the initial position.

1. It requires patience to look after children. 2. It's not easy to master a foreign language thoroughly. 3. It's always been very dangerous to climb the western slope of Everest. 4. It's bad for her figure to eat between meals. 5. It's very useful to sleep in the open air. 6. It's sometimes important to be helped. 7. It was a great mistake to act in that way. 8. It is necessary to call off the meeting. 9. It is interesting to learn about other cultures. 10. It is healthy to get up early and not to stay up late. 11. It is a good thing to be free and alone if you are tired of big cities. 12. It is useless to learn rules without examples. 13. It was lovely to have a holiday in winter. 14. It was difficult to teach him French.

3. Join the two sentences to make one sentence with a ger- und as the subject.

Model: Ann is a doctor. It's hard work. – Being a doctor is hard work.

1. He never goes out. That must be boring. 2. They share a flat. This sometimes causes arguments. 3. John doesn't have any friends. This must make him lonely. 4. He missed the train. It depressed him. 5. Mark delivers lectures at Stanford University. It takes up a lot of his time. 6. He is a system analyst. It requires good mathematical ability. 7. The employees turn up late each morning. It has made the manager furious. 8. Telephone people at times when you know they are busy. It makes your conversation shorter. 9. Carol looks after old people. It's tiring. 10. Helen is a nurse. It's hard work. 11. He lost his twin sister at the age of fourteen. That probably affected him for life.

4. Complete a sentence. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject with the introductory *It* or *There*.

Model: There's no... (to fix the alarm-clock). – There's no fixing the alarm-clock.

1. It's no use... (to worry about it). 2. Is it any good... (to turn to him for advice)? 3. There's no... (to prevent him from it). 4. It was useless... (to compete with this firm). 5. It was a pleasure... (to ski in the mountains). 6. There was no... (to get the best-seller). 7. It was such fun... (to have a big party). 7. There was no... (to avoid another scandal). 9. It will be of no use... (to ask them to come). 10. There is no... (to predict her future). 11. It's no good... (to deceive your parents). 12. It was quite a surprise... (to meet him in Paris). 13. There is no... (to know what may happen next). 14. It's useless... (to hope for his assistance).

5. Complete the sentences using gerundial phrases as sub- jects.

Model: ...isn't easy. – Climbing to the top of a mountain isn't easy.

1. ...is a demanding job. 2. ...turned out to be a mistake. 3. ...has changed my life. 4. ...requires great skill and concentration. 5. ...is a complicated process. 6. ...is a waste of time. 7. ...was a real disappointment. 8. ... will only add to your problems. 9. ...is my cherished dream. 10. ...is out of the question. 11. ...was her constant passion. 12. ...is like a dream come true. 13. ...was painful. 14. ...won't be of any use. 15. ...is the best thing while travelling.

6. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Переходити річку в цьому місці небезпечно. 2. вивчення іноземної мови займає тривалий час. 3. сперечатися з ним - це тільки даремно втрачати час. 4. Немає пояснення такому провалу. 5. чи є сенс гуляти під дощем? 6. Виховання дітей - складний процес. 7. Тим, що ти будеш набридати йому, ти тільки розсердиш його більше. 8. У таку пору року є тільки одна можливість дістатися туди - це літаком. 9. Немає жодної різниці, прийдеш ти чи ні. 10. Неможливо переконати його не робити цього. 11. Куріння небезпечно для здоров'я. 12. Листування з англійцями допомагає вдосконалювати мову. 13. Важливо щодня займатися ранковою гімнастикою. 14. Сон на відкритому повітрі дуже корисний. 15. Читання книг з історії Англії - приємне і корисне заняття для майбутнього вчителя англійської мови. 16. Поїздка до моря була необхідна всій родині.

17. Не можна заперечувати, що він вчинив правильно. 18. Мій улюблений вид спорту - плавання. 19. приваблювати гостей досить складно. 20. Йому ніяк не догодиш. 21. Безрезультатно дзвонити йому, його в цей час не буває вдома. 22. Марна трата часу - дивитися серіали. 23. Зустріч із нею здавалася гарним завершенням дня.

THE GERUND AS PREDICATIVE

The gerund as predicative

When the gerund is used as part of a compound nominal predicate it functions as a *predicative*.

e.g. Her hobby is painting.

The gerund as predicative is sometimes preceded by the preposition *like*.

e.g. At the time their quarrel looked *like* going on forever.

1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as predicative. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Ann's hobby is collecting all sorts of butterflies. 2. The important part is helping people so that they can live normal lives. 3. To cross the stream in the place meant walking knee-deep in the water. 4. The worst thing for her was being sent away from her family. 5. What he loves best in the world is playing tennis. 6. The main thing to do in this situation is getting away as soon as possible. 7. The problem was helping them regularly. 8. The only service you can do him is keeping quiet. 9. But this seems like going to a friend for a reference. 10. The next thing to do is cleaning the flat.

2. Complete the sentences using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as predicative.

Model: My hobby is.... – My hobby is fishing.

1. Her ambition is.... 2. She said that her only regular duty was... 3. Her intention was.... 4. The first thing to do will be.... 5. Most interesting hobbies are.... 6. The only way out was.... 7. Her first thought was... 8. My next step will be.... 9. The teacher's task is.... 10. The most important thing is.... 11. His principle was.... 12. Every student's dream is.... 13. Her favourite pastime is.... 14. The only chance was....

3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Наступний крок полягав у тому, щоб спробувати переконати їх прийняти наші умови. 2. Мрією Джона було заробляти на життя і допомагати матері. 3. Єдиний вихід - розлучитися з ним. 4. Головне - відмовити його від цієї поїздки. 5. Його хобі - колекціонувати монети. 6. Найгірший варіант - прийти без запрошення. 7. Моя пропозиція полягає в тому, щоб обговорити це питання на майбутньому зібранні. 8. Що йому завжди хотілося, так це робити тільки те, що йому подобається. 9. Бути закоханим - означає весь час думати про цю іншу людину. 10. Важливою частиною його роботи є догляд за дітьми. 11. Найбільшим його бажанням було розповісти їй усе. 12. Мій план полягав у тому, щоб провести там рік, поки я не вивчу іноземну мову. 13. Читати його романи було все одно, що плавати в чистому озері. 14. Єдино розумним буде піти якомога швидше. 15. Головним для нас було читати якомога більше книг в оригіналі. 16. Вісімдесят відсотків успіху полягає в тому, щоб опинитися в потрібний момент у потрібному місці. 17. складність полягала в тому, щоб розповісти їй правду.

THE GERUND AS A PART OF A COMPOUND VERBAL PREDICATE

In combination with phasal verbs the gerund forms a compound verbal phasal predicate. The phasal verbs denote various stages of the action, such as its beginning, continuation, or end. The most common phasal verbs followed by the gerund are: *to begin, to start, to burst out, to continue, to go on, to keep on, to cease, to finish, to give up, to leave off, to stop*.

e.g. The doctor continued examining the patient.

Note: The gerund in this function can't be used and only the Infinitive is possible

1) when the finite verb is used in the continuous form

e.g. It is beginning to drizzle.
 2) when the subject denotes a thing, not a living being
 e.g. The clock began to strike.
 3) with the verbs *to understand* and *to see* (in the meaning of *to understand*)
 e.g. I began to understand the situation.

Note: Note the difference in the meaning of *stop + a gerund* and *stop + an infinitive*

<p>stop + a gerund = to end an action, to finish doing something The gerund in this case is part of a compound verbal phasal predicate e.g. Stop <u>shouting</u></p>	<p>stop + an infinitive = to stop so that you can do something The infinitive in this case is an adverbial modifier of purpose e.g. We stopped <u>to buy</u> a paper.</p>
--	--

There is also some difference in the meaning of *go on + a gerund* and *go on + an infinitive*, though it doesn't tell on the syntactical function of the whole.

<p>to go on + a gerund = to continue doing e.g. Go on <u>talking</u></p>	<p>to go on + an infinitive = to do something different, to do the next thing. We took out the weeds and went on <u>to plant</u> the flowers</p>
---	---

1. Point out the gerund used as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. She continued working after her illness. 2. My doctor advised I'd give up eating starchy foods. 3. Tom went on talking with my mother. 4. On hearing the joke everybody burst out laughing. 5. The rest of us had finished eating, but Cave had cut himself another slice of cheese. 6. He kept on smiling at her and speaking. 7. Start reading the novel now. 8. The detective began questioning her about the car accident. 9. We left before the orchestra ceased playing. 10. I'm a vegetarian. I stopped eating meat 10 years ago. 11. She left off reading the text at page nine.

2. Complete the sentences using the gerund as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.

1. Roger went on... (to speak with energy and warmth). 2. I began... (to paint a year ago). 3. She continued... (to talk about her holiday all evening). 4. Why don't you tell him to stop... (to play the radio all night)? 5. You must begin... (to work harder). 6. He ceased... (to work at the report). 7. Your health will improve as soon as you give up... (to smoke). 8. I can't remember where we left off... (to copy out the text). 9. She kept on... (to interrupt me while I was speaking). 10. Have you finished... (to do your homework)?

3. Insert an infinitive or a gerund.

1. She got annoyed because her husband stopped (look) in every shop window. 2. I'm beginning (realize) how difficult this is. 3. She got a degree in Physics and then went on (take) a course in Applied Maths. 4. The water began (boil). 5. Just stop (talk) and listen for a moment. 6. If we hadn't turned the music off they'd have gone on (dance) till morning. 7. His father began (understand) that he was lying. 8. I had just started (eat) when the waiter took my plate away. 9. We stopped (buy) food in the store because we were hungry. 10. He continued (drink) strong drinks. 11. She began (see) how to do it. 12. They stopped (produce) refrigerators because of their workers' strike. 13. Look! It's beginning (rain). 14. She went on (talk) about her illness for hours. 15. My friends are beginning (make) a film. 16. She couldn't begin (unpack). 17. We stopped (buy) food in the store because the owner raised the prices. 18. The article went on (say) that Miss MacLean was born in Dublin and still had relations living there. 19. The alarm-clock began (ring). 20. When her husband came she continued (watch) TV. 21. Without wait-

ing for his reply she started (gather) the plums. 22. Do stop (make) this awful noise! 23. I'll never begin (understand) how he thinks. 24. We've only stopped (buy) some petrol.

THE GERUND AS DIRECT OBJECT

As a direct object the gerund follows a number of transitive verbs, some of which take only the gerund, while others may be followed either by the gerund or by the infinitive.

The following verbs are followed only by the gerund:

to admit	to detest	to mention	to resent
to appreciate	to escape	to mind	to resist
to avoid	to enjoy	to miss	to risk
to consider	to excuse	to postpone	to suggest
to contemplate	to fancy	to practise	to understand
to delay	to forgive	to put off	can't help
to deny	to imagine	to recollect	can't stand

e.g. They enjoyed having a guest that evening. He admitted taking the money.
I can't understand his/him leaving his wife.

The gerund and the infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive, usually with a difference in meaning. The gerund and the infinitive have much in common. They both have some nominal and some verbal features. However, the gerund is more general whereas the infinitive is more specific and more bound to some particular occasion.

The most important cases are:

to allow	to forget	to like	to propose
to advise	to hate	to permit	to regret
to try	to mean	to prefer	to remember
to forbid	to intend		

With *remember*, *forget*, *regret* the difference is connected with time. The gerund refers to things that happen earlier (before the remembering, forgetting, or regretting took place); the infinitive refers to things that happen after the remembering, etc

<p>remember + a gerund = remember what one has done, or what has happened e.g. I remember <u>seeing</u> this man before.</p>	<p>remember + an infinitive = remember what one has to do e.g. Please, remember <u>to close</u> the window.</p>
<p>forget + a gerund = forget what one has done, or what has happened e.g. Have you forgotten <u>meeting</u> me 2 years ago?</p>	<p>forget + an infinitive = forget what one has to do e.g. Don't forget <u>to put out</u> all the lights before you leave</p>
<p>regret + a gerund = to be sorry for what has happened e.g. I regret <u>saying</u> what I said.</p>	<p>regret + an infinitive = to be sorry for what one is going to say e.g. I regret <u>to say</u> I feel ill.</p>
<p>like + a gerund = enjoy e.g. I like <u>going</u> to the cinema.</p>	<p>like + an infinitive = to choose to..., to think it right to... e.g. Tom likes <u>to do</u> the washing up immediately</p>

	after the meal
allow, advise, forbid, permit + a gerund is used when there is no personal object e.g. He doesn't allow <u>smoking</u> in his office.	allow, advise, forbid, permit + an infinitive is used with a personal object e.g. He doesn't allow anyone <u>to smoke</u> in his office.
love, hate, prefer + a gerund is used when we refer to a general statement e.g. Do you prefer <u>typing</u> letters to <u>writing</u> them by hand?	love, hate, prefer + an infinitive is used when we refer to one particular occasion e.g. I prefer <u>to wait</u> here.
try + a gerund = to test, to make an experiment e.g. Try <u>holding</u> your breath for a minute.	try + an infinitive = to attempt an action, to make an effort e.g. Try <u>to understand</u> .
mean + a gerund = to involve e.g. I agree if the job won't mean <u>moving</u> to another area.	mean + an infinitive = to intend e.g. He means <u>to get</u> at the truth, however long it can take.
propose + a gerund = to put forward for consideration e.g. "Half past six," said Mike, "what do you propose <u>doing</u> ?"	propose + an infinitive = to intend e.g. He didn't propose <u>to forgive</u> them this time.
need + a gerund = needs to be done e.g. The house needs <u>painting</u> .	need + an infinitive = have to do e.g. I need <u>to borrow</u> some money to repair the roof.

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as direct object. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Forgive my ringing you up so early. 2. He resented me being promoted before him. 3. I appreciate your giving me so much of your time. 4. I couldn't help laughing when I saw him wearing those trousers. 5. Have you forgotten giving me the money? 6. Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow. 7. The batteries in this radio need changing. 8. She risks losing all her money. 9. I can't imagine George riding a motorbike. 10. Would you mind my using your phone? 11. If a thing is worth doing at all it is worth doing well. 12. If you can't turn the key try putting some oil in the lock. 13. Try to avoid making him angry. 14. I loved reading about all those gods and goddesses when I was young. 15. Oh, how I dislike being interrupted! 16. I can't understand you being angry. 17. He enjoyed teaching and knew that he did it well. 18. What do you recollect doing a fortnight ago? 19. I think it exciting our taking part in the conference. 20. We don't permit smoking in this restaurant.

2. Answer the following questions.

1. What should you avoid doing? 2. What should you consider doing? 3. What can't you imagine doing in the morning? 4. What do you usually put off doing? 5. What do you recollect doing a week ago? 6. What can't you help doing on weekends? 7. What do you usually hate doing? 8. What can you risk doing once in a while? 9. What does your friend detest doing? 10. What doesn't your friend mind doing? 11. What does your friend enjoy doing? 12. What does your friend dislike doing? 13. What has your friend denied having done? 14. What has your friend admitted having done?

3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

1. Would you mind (shut) the window? I hate (sit) in a draught. 2. I can't understand her (behave) like that. 3. I arranged (meet) him there. 4. I'm glad I don't have to work such long hours as Susan. I wouldn't like (work) eighty hours a week. 5. I hate (ask) you personal questions, but it's part of my business, I can't help it. 6. I regret (inform) you that your application has been refused. 7. I remember (visit) Paris when I was very young. 8. I forgot (go) to the chemist's on my way home. 9. If you want to stop coughing, why don't you try (drink) some water? 10. Please remember (lock) the door on your way out. 11. They forbid students (smoke) in the faculty building. 12. They forbid (smoke) in the faculty building. 13. I regret (tell) you that there's been an accident. 14. He regretted (stay) in the same job so long. 15. I wish (see) the manager. 16. She likes her children (go) to the dentist every six months. 17. I couldn't help (overhear) what you said. 18. Try (forget) it; it isn't worth (worry) about. 19. He hates (answer) the phone, and very often just lets it (ring). 20. Would you mind (put) your pet snake somewhere else? 21. He warned her (not touch) the wire. 22. The police suspect him of trying (sell) stolen goods. 23. He wore dark glasses (avoid) (be) recognized. 24. The librarian doesn't allow us (talk) here. 25. The librarian doesn't allow (talk) in the reading hall. 26. He urged us (work) faster. 27. Most people prefer (spend) money to (earn) it. 28. I resented (be) unjustly accused and asked him (apologize). 29. I didn't mean (offend) anyone. 30. My friend is writing a scientific paper. It means (work) in the library a lot. 31. We need (start) at once, or we may be late. 32. The house needs (repair). 33. Would you like (have) a look round? 34. Do you fancy (watch) the rugby match on TV this evening? 35. Have you forgotten (lend) him your track-suit? He'll need it soon. 36. Mr. Levin won't be this week – I suggest (get) a temp to cover his workload. 37. She advised them (inform) the police about the accident. 38. You know, Jane likes (give) advice, and on the day Eve arrived, the girl was advised (change) the colour of her hair. 39. She couldn't help (attract) by the fact that she was being looked at. 40. She tried (explain) the situation but he refused (listen) and went on grumbling. 41. He tried (persuade) them to sign a contract.

4. Make one sentence out of two. Use either a gerund or a to-infinitive.

Model: Daniel didn't call at the shop to take the cake. He forgot. – Daniel forgot to call at the shop to take the cake.

1. Polly didn't phone me. She forgot. 2. Sophie missed her chance to get a medal at school. She regrets it. 3. The house looks shabby. We must paint it. It needs it. 4. The singer didn't think he could sing that difficult song. He didn't even try. 5. Mike was rude to his mother. He didn't mean it. 6. I left the door open. I didn't lock it. I forgot. 7. It's a pity we didn't visit Jane. I would like it. 8. He once saw the Beatles. He will always remember it. 9. I wanted to close the window. I tried, but I couldn't. 10. I told John and he told everyone. Now I regret it; everyone knows! 11. She remembered their appointment. So she met him at the restaurant. 12. He used to smoke a lot. But he stopped 5 years ago. 13. We had been playing tennis for hours. And still we went on with the game.

5. Translate into English. Use infinitives or gerunds.

1. Він любив перебувати в товаристві своїх родичів. 2. Вони забули запросити мене. 1. Ти пам'ятаєш, як ти привіз виноградний сік того ранку? 4. Вона не заперечувала проти того, щоб бути самій у котеджі. 5. Я думаю, вам сподобається жити тут, коли настане літо. 6. Можливо, Моллі пошкодувала, що вона так багато базікала. 7. Решта, без метушні, погодилися взяти участь. 8. "Послухайте! Чому ви так мене не любите?" - «Ну, напевно, тому, що саме ви змушуєте мене відчувати, що не варто жити.» 9. Цей фільм варто подивитися. Вам не зможе не сподобатися прекрасна гра акторів. 10. Він мав намір почати своє розслідування з огляду саду. 11. Він терпіти не може, коли його хвалять. 12. Вони не могли не розсміятися, побачивши клоуна. 13. Я пам'ятаю, він голосно сміявся, коли розповідав цю історію. 14. Він намагався уникнути зустрічі з ким-небудь, кого він знав. 15. Її друзі обіцяли надіслати їй роботу. 16. Мені не хотілося залишати його одного в горі, і я запропонував відвезти його до себе додому. 17. Спробуйте носити сонцезахисні

окуляри. Ви відчуєте себе набагато краще. 18. Я запропонував поїхати туди на машині, але мої друзі не погодилися. 19. Вікна в цій кімнаті дуже брудні; їх необхідно вимити. 20. Він спробував змінити порядок слів у реченні. 21. Вона забуде і не скаже Джону про лист. 22. Він шкодує, що йому доведеться залишитися вдома. 23. Він шкодує, що сказав мені неправду. 24. Вона воліє все робити сама без будь-якої допомоги.

THE GERUND AS PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT

As a prepositional object the gerund may follow monotransitive verbs, ditransitive verbs taking a direct object and a prepositional object, adjectives and statives and participle II, generally used as a predicative.

monotransitive verbs

to agree to doing sth to object to doing sth to look forward to doing sth to take to doing sth	to count on doing sth to depend on doing sth to rely on doing sth to insist on doing sth
to hear of doing sth to learn of doing sth to think of doing sth to dream of doing sth	to persist in doing sth to consist in doing sth to succeed in doing sth to result in doing sth to believe in doing sth

e.g. I'm looking forward to his coming.

ditransitive verbs taking a direct object and a prepositional object

to accuse sb of doing sth to suspect sb of doing sth	to assist sb in doing sth to help sb in doing sth
to prevent sb from doing sth to stop sb from doing sth to discourage sb from doing sth	to congratulate smb. on to warn smb. against
to thank sb for doing sth to blame sb for doing sth to praise sb for doing sth to punish sb for doing sth to reproach sb for doing sth to sentence sb for doing sth	

e.g. You should be punished for driving carelessly. What prevented him from becoming a professional singer?

adjectives and statives

to be afraid of doing sth to be (un)aware of doing sth to be (un)conscious of doing sth to be capable of doing sth to be fond of doing sth to be ignorant of doing sth to be proud of doing sth to be sick of doing sth to be sure of doing sth	to be good / clever / bad at to be responsible for to be sorry about to be keen on
---	---

e.g. She is keen on John passing this exam. If only I were capable of doing that!

Note: The stative *afraid* can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive with a difference in meaning.

be afraid + a gerund

= not to want to do sth. because there's a possibility that sth. bad will happen
e.g. I don't like dogs. I'm always afraid of being bitten.

be afraid + an infinitive

= dare not do sth.

e.g. The streets in this city are not safe at night. Many people are afraid to go out.

participle II

to be accustomed to doing sth to be used to doing sth	to be absorbed in doing sth to be engrossed in doing sth	to be surprised at doing sth to be disappointed at doing sth
to be annoyed with/at doing to be (dis)pleased with/at doing	to be engaged in doing sth to be interested in doing sth	to be tired of doing sth to be scared of doing sth
to be bored with doing sth to be excited about doing sth		

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerund construction. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Did they suspect the man of being a spy? 2. What prevented him from coming to the wedding? 3. He apologized for keeping me waiting. 4. The children were excited about going on holiday. 5. He was unconscious of Anna standing beside him. 6. She dreamed of somehow being able to help her step- mother. 7. The old lady was engaged in making clothes for her neighbours' children. 8. She assisted her husband in building the house. 9. The quarrel resulted in his mother leaving the house. 10. He succeeded in finishing his thesis. 11. My friend warned me against doing business with this firm. 12. We were disappointed at having lost the game. 13. We decided against moving to Paris. 14. Sid is sick of hearing about your sulks every time he comes home. 15. Thanks for phoning. 16. She was used to seeing him at the office.

2. Insert the prepositions.

1. Do you feel ... visiting your friend? 2. I congratulated Peter ... pass- ing the exam. 3. They accused me ... telling lies. 4. I thanked her ... being so helpful. 5. He thinks ... changing his job. 6. Willie is scared ... being sent away. 7. You should insist ... the lock being changed. 8. He is quite excited... being among us again. 9. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars. 10. After all, I'm fairly used ... keeping my mouth shut. 11. Eden said, "I'm sorry ... the car being cold." 12. She hadn't succeeded ... making her sister talk. 13. Did she seem to object in any way ... your visiting the house. 14. Time passes quickly when you are absorbed ... reading a good book. 15. He was unaware ... being followed. 16. You can't prevent life ... going on and changing. 17. Liberty consists ... doing what one desires. 18. He will persist ... smoking though he is unwell. 19. She was displeased ... being introduced to her own niece. 20. They have decided ... buying a new car. 21. He isn't very good ... taking decisions quickly. 22. They don't approve ... her getting married to James. 23. She is sure ... having seen you. 24. Is he accustomed ... working hard? 25. I'll never agree ... changing my plan. 26. He is engaged ... writing a book. 27. He is blamed ... insulting his teacher. 28. He scolded me ... not having let him know. 29. Who will help me ... hanging these pictures?

3. Complete the sentences. Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs given in parenthesis.

1. The complicated rules will discourage people (to play) the game. 2. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you (to want, not) to go to the meeting. 3. I believe (to discuss) things openly. 4. If you don't book in advance, you can't rely (to find) a hotel room. 5. I look forward (to see) you next time I'm in town. 6. Frank believes animals should be protected from hunters. He objects (to kill) wild animals for sport. 7. She is thinking (to become) a rock star. 8. The speaker was annoyed (to interrupt) every other moment. 9. He insists (to pay) for his work done. 10. He is not used (to speak to) like that. 11. Debbie is really excited (to go) abroad for the first time. 12. I'm bored (to wait) here doing nothing. 13. They're talking (to build) a new

sports center. 14. We congratulate you (to complete) your work. 15. If he persists (to marry) the girl, it will mean absolute ruin for him. 16. She took (to wear) jeans. 17. I wondered if I ought to apologize (to write) the letter. 18. I was tired (to wear) charity clothes. 19. At the time I was keen (to get) an independent income. 20. Are you scared (to walk) alone through the dark streets at night? 21. The tourists complained (to get, not) any sleep. 22. Andrew is very fond (to tell) jokes. 23. I'm pleased (to go) for a fitting tomorrow. 24. We are interested (to start) a discussion group. 25. Thank you (to help) me carry the packages to the post office. 26. You are capable (to do) better work. 27. They couldn't stop him (to do) stupid things. 28. We reproach people (to talk) about themselves. 29. We were worrying (to be underdressed) for the occasion. 30. I didn't feel (to read) his new novel. 31. Can we meet tonight or will you be again engaged (to complete) your work? 32. The man was disappointed (to admit, not) to the meeting. 33. I found him absorbed (to watch) a new video film. 34. The four-year-old was blamed (to break) the glass candy dish. 35. The angry look on his face stopped me (to speak) my mind.

4. Combine each pair of sentences into one. Use a gerund with the proper preposition.

Model: The firemen stopped the fire. It didn't spread. – The firemen stopped the fire from spreading

1. My friend apologized. He broke my cassette-player. 2. I thanked him. He told me the news. 3. The surgeon succeeded. He transplanted the kidney and saved the patient's life. 4. He blames me. He says I think only about myself. 5. Jane congratulated Ted. He got a Ph. D. in Medicine. 6. The police should punish the driver. He broke the speed limit. 7. The customer complained. He was given a bad umbrella. 8. Higher prices will discourage people. They won't buy things. 9. The police prevented the crime. It didn't take place. 10. People blamed the driver. He didn't stop at the crossroads. 11. The workers have accused the management. They say the management is doing nothing to change the dramatic situation. 12. She is very fat and the doctors do not approve of it. They think she shouldn't eat so much.

5. Make up a simple sentence. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

1. They accused their friend of the fact that he was not a man of his word. 2. I suspected that she was making things hot for her enemies. 3. We insisted that she should reject your terms. 4. He succeeded and made fortune out of some canal business. 5. I'm looking forward to the day when you are in the mood of playing music for me. 6. She wasn't aware that you had accepted our terms. 7. I rely on the hope that you will do me justice. 8. They were indignant that you were not calling things their proper names. 9. She felt in the mood to talk business (to feel like). 10. They were guilty that they had not enquired into the matter. 11. We were disappointed that the picture had no great value. 12. She dreamed that sooner or later they would come to an amicable agreement. 13. She complained that they were not strong enough to endure such trials. 14. He objected to the fact that Mrs. Broad should stay in the house any longer. 15. She was unconscious that she had said the wrong thing. 16. Tom insisted that he should drive Ann to the station.

6. Complete the sentences using the gerund as prepositional object.

1. He succeeded in 2. What prevented you from 3. I am fond of 4. They haven't thought of 5. My sister was never tired of 6. I am looking forward to 7. I offered to fetch his things, but he insisted on 8. Do you object to ...? 9. He thanked me for 10. You should be punished for 11. My mother warned me against 12. He was unaware of 13. We are sorry about 14. The secretary was disappointed at 15. I was displeased at 16. He was too used to 17. The children were absorbed in 18. She assisted me in 19. I don't feel like 20. Nothing could stop me from

7. a) Complete the second half of the sentence with the verb in the -ing form. b) Add the name of a person in your group for whom you think this might be true.

Model: David enjoys wasting (waste) time.

1. ... hates ... (watch) football matches. 2. ... is interested in ... (learn) languages. 3. ... likes ... (sit) in the sun and ... (listen) to pop music. 4. ... soon gets tired of ... (do) the same thing. 5. ... is good at ... (organize) parties. 6. ... loves ... (argue) and ... (discuss) things. 7. ... is fond

of ... (collect) things. 8. ... doesn't approve of ... (smoke). 9. ... is thinking of ... (become) a rock star. 10. ... dislikes ... (save) money. 11. ... can't stand ... (watch) romantic films.

8. Translate into English. Choose the correct preposition.

1. Я покладаюся на те, що цей лист буде відіслано вами вчасно. 2. Він відповідальний за те, щоб сад утримувався в порядку. 3. Він залишив лист, звинувачуючи її в тому, що вона обдурила його. 4. Я наполягаю на тому, щоб ви відповіли їм негайно. 5. Ви можете розраховувати на те, що він дасть вам точну інформацію. 6. Тоді я запідозрив його в тому, що він мене дражнить. 7. Не було нічого, що могло б перешкодити йому повернутися в Париж. 8. Він вибачився, що затримав мене. 9. Я впевнений, що ти цілком здатний впоратися з ситуацією. 10. Я був трохи розчарований тим, що зустрів Чарльза. 11. Він був роздратований на неї за те, що вона втягнула його в цю сварку. 12. Він дорікав собі за те, що не спробував поговорити з нею. 13. ти явно вмієш тримати язик за зубами. 14. Їй вдалося ще більше погіршити ситуацію. 15. Як це ти вмовив (talk into) її поїхати з тобою на море? 16. Я зацікавлений у тому, щоб знайти її. 17. Брат не усвідомлював, що він зробив щось погане і образив свого друга. 18. Деякий час він не давав (stop from) їй думати про цю трагедію. 19. я здивувався, що він узагалі одружився. 20. Він відчув, що втомився від своєї безпорадності. 21. Він любив сміятися над тими, хто боязкий. 22. Я хотів поговорити з нею, але вона вся була поглинена музикою. 23. Їй було приємно, коли її розпитували про її подорож.

THE GERUND AS AN ATTRIBUTE

When used as an attribute, the gerund is most often preceded by a preposition, mostly by the preposition *of*. It generally modifies abstract nouns, such as: *air, art, business, chance, danger, habit, hope, idea, impression, intention, knowledge, method, necessity, opportunity, pleasure, possibility, question, recollection, risk, sign, way, prospect, misfortune*.

e.g. They discussed different methods of teaching foreign languages. I have no intention of going there.

The gerund may also be preceded by the prepositions *for, in, at, about* and *to*. But they are by far less common than *of*.

These prepositions are found after a limited number of nouns which regularly require their use. They are the following:

For – apology, instruction, explanation, reason, excuse, plan, passion, gift, reputation, talent, motive, grounds.

In – experience, use, skill, interest, sense, harm, difficulty, hesitation.

At – amazement, astonishment, attempt, delight, surprise, irritation, disappointment.

About – obsession, fantasy.

To – objection.

He has no objection to being sent there.

The doctor left three different medicines with instructions for giving them.

When a gerund modifies a concrete noun it is preceded by the preposition *for* and the whole gerundial phrase as attribute expresses the purpose or destination of the thing mentioned.

e.g. A herb is a plant for adding flavour to food.

The gerund-attribute may also precede the noun it modifies. Then it is used without a preposition. In this case the modified noun does not denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund but usually denotes the object of the action expressed by the gerund.

e.g. A swimming pool – a pool for swimming A diving suit – a suit for diving

A singing teacher – a teacher of singing

Together with the modified noun the gerund-attribute makes an attributive phrase. In this case the gerundial attributive phrase should be distinguished from the participial attributive phrase, which differs from the gerundial one in meaning. In the participial phrase the modified noun is the doer of the action expressed by the participle.

e.g. A dancing girl – a girl who is dancing

A burning house – a house that is burning

1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as attribute. Translate the sentences into Russian. Note the prepositions preceding the attributes.

1. I had given up hope of ever hearing from him. 2. He said that he had no chance of learning the truth. 3. Did he have any special reason for doing that? 4. There doesn't seem to be any sense in wasting more money. 5. Her parents were terribly upset at the thought of her giving evidence. 6. She had a real passion for reading detective stories. 7. I saw no harm in asking a few questions. 8. They had no hesitation in describing the situation as ridiculous. 9. After three months I got an obsession about having a place of my own. 10. After a while I began to have a feeling of being watched. 11. I have no experience in building houses. 12. The prospect of travelling with two elderly very dull people made me regret my hasty decision yesterday. 13. I was making up my mind to another attempt at persuading him to do it. 14. There was no point in going further. 15. I feel the need for seeing you again.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

Model: I have an idea to write a short story. – I have an idea of writing a short story.

1. Little children have a big capacity to learn nursery rhymes by heart. 2. I have no intention to go there. 3. There are different ways to do it. 4. Ann's boss disapproved of her objection to take a computer course. 5. We have no purpose to change the flat in the near future. 6. He was trying to find a way to earn a little money. 7. He made no attempt to stand up. 8. I had no opportunity to speak to them. 9. There is often a temptation to judge somebody. 10. They can't find any means to make her leave him. 11. The thought she would leave soon was unbearable. 12. There is no chance that we shall come there in time. 13. She took a peculiar delight in the fact that he was Peter's son. 14. She gave no sign that she heard that he had slammed the door. 15. Our teacher has a good idea to take us to Moscow in the summer. 16. I am fed up with my sister's habit to put things in the wrong place. 17. He hates the idea to be alone on the weekend.

3. Join the sentences paraphrasing them. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute. Use the noun suggested as a noun modified by the attribute.

Model: Jack often flies off the handle. He can't explain why. – Jack can't explain the reason for flying off the handle.

1. I'm sure one can improve the design. There's a way to do it. (way). 2. It was necessary to pay the rent before the end of the week. She realized it. (necessity) 3. We wanted to measure it. We couldn't find a proper instrument. (instrument) 4. You want to make arrangements for them. You should know whether they are going to book a hotel room. (intention) 5. He is certain that he is right to do it. He has no hesitation in it. (hesitation) 6. The costumes are made in a very skilled way. He has had a lot of experience. (experience). 7. She was given an opportunity to discuss it with him. She couldn't but take it. (chance) 8. Nick wants his friend to go there. His friend thinks there is no sense in it. (sense) 9. Kate knows how to arrange a good party. If you ask her she will tell you about it. (idea) 10. They told him a lie. They couldn't find any excuse. (excuse) 11. She objects when strict rules are imposed on her children. Her husband doesn't approve of her objection. (objection)

4. Open the parenthesis. Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs in parenthesis.

1. Sheila was gay, and had set herself the task (to teach) me to take an interest in painting. 2. She had great difficulty (to show, not) her feelings. 3. Ann has a pleasant gift (to keep) the conversation general. 4. She cherished her delight (to call) a woman of title by her Christian name. 5. I didn't want to run the risk (to meet) Tom coming back from work. 6. He was frightened at the thought (to leave) home. 7. There doesn't seem to be much point (to come). 8. Tom and Dave were both in the highest spirits, and had clearly no intention (to part) from me. 9. When I asked him what first gave him the idea (to be) a painter, he was unable or unwilling to tell me. 10. Paul had no hesitation (to accept) the help. 11. When society requires to be rebuilt, there is no use (to attempt) to rebuild it on the old plan. 12. She sometimes gave an impression (to be) older than she really was. 13. He was depressed by the necessity (to come) to a decision. 14. I repeat, that was one of my reasons (to give) you this news today. 15. She has a wonderful

talent (to get) the best out of people. 16. If there is a chance (to save) them it's your duty to try. 17. She didn't like his habit (to smoke) a cigar after dinner. 18. He was full of apologies (to hurt) her. 19. Mary had no experience (to drive) a car. 20. Mike had no objection (to share) domestic chores with his wife. 21. I think, the art (to teach) requires tolerance and patience. 22. We can understand your surprise (the exam, to postpone). 23. He seemed in the best of tempers at the prospect (to spend) the evening away from his family. 24. He had the great misfortune (to see) by his father. 25. He would sit up straight in his bed with his feet tucked under him so that you had the impression (to receive) by a rajah. 26. The boy showed his skill (to build) model boats. 27. He admired his way (to do) things well. 28. She gave no sign (to inform) of their arrival. 29. Imagine his surprise (to see) me. 30. Also there was always the possibility (I, to run) into Ann herself.

5. Complete the sentences using the gerund as attribute.

1. He is sure to have an opportunity of 2. He described the method of 3. He has a reputation of 4. I have really no intention of 5. She had great difficulty in 6. It will be a good idea of 7. John had no hesitation in 8. I feel the need for 9. We have no objection to 10. I am not much in the habit of 11. He spoke in the hope of 12. We can understand your disappointment at 13. She has no confidence in 14. I have already planned a way of 15. She possessed to a remarkable degree the power of 16. He had a better chance of 17. Is there any sense in ...? 18. Larry couldn't explain the reason for

6. Translate the sentences into English. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

1. Звичайно, у мене була перевага в тому, що я дуже добре знав цю людину. 2. Коли він говорив, складалося враження, що він нервує і ніяково себе почуває. 3. чи є в когось заперечення проти того, щоб я побачився з ним? 4. Я насилу відчинив двері через масу газет і листів, що лежали на підлозі. 5. Не було ніякого сенсу сидіти в кімнаті цілий день. 6. Я не міг винести думки, що вона така нещаслива і так далеко. 7. Як ти думаєш, у нас є шанс, що нам повірять? 8. У мене є підстави бажати зберегти цей будинок. 9. У нього була звичка засиджуватися до пізньої ночі. 10. У лютому він поїхав на схід із наміром продати свою справу й оселитися в Нью-Йорку. 10. Уранці йшов дощ, і вона відмовилася від усякої надії потрапити в басейн. 12. Не було можливості купити дешевий магнітофон. 13. У мене не було вагань у тому, щоб допомогти їм. 14. Питання про збільшення їм зарплати обговорюється вже місяць. 15. Я знав, що моєї господині не буде вдома до пізнього вечора, тому не мало сенсу йти додому. 16. Я зазвичай знаходжу способи розважати себе, коли я залишаюся вдома сам. 17. Я радий, що маю можливість розмовляти з вами, лікарю. 18. Думка про розставання ніколи не приходила нам у голову. 19. він розуміє важливість вивчення іноземних мов. 20. він висловив велике здивування, почувши це. 21. Я мав задоволення познайомитися з вашим батьком днями. 22. У вас немає причини підозрювати його. 23. У нього було мало досвіду у викладанні англійської мови. 24. Які сучасні методи навчання іноземних мов використовуються у вашому університеті?

THE GERUND AS ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

The gerund may be used as an adverbial modifier of:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| a) time | e) concession |
| b) reason | f) condition |
| c) manner | g) purpose |
| d) attendant circumstances | |

adverbial modifier of time

Due to the meaning of the prepositions preceding the gerund it may indicate

- priority (*after, on/upon, since*)
- simultaneity (*in, at*) and
- posterity (*before*)

e.g. On entering the room he at once distinguished some changes. In reading the poem she learnt it by heart.

Before giving him a call think the whole matter over.

1. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of time. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of time and say whether the gerund denotes priority, simultaneity or posterity. Translate the sentence into Ukrainian.

1. At seeing the sweets in her mother's hands the girl smiled. 2. On returning home from school I noticed a small statuette on our living-room shelf. 3. I was to walk over to my grandmother's before going home. 4. In telling tales about his friends he was never ashamed. 5. He had not written to her since leaving. 6. I took my temperature and, upon finding it was a hundred point four, went back to bed again. 7. After failing his first exam at university, he moved away to a small town in the South. 8. I paused outside the parlour door, on hearing my mother's voice. 9. In crossing the street look first to the left and then to the right. 10. Before digging his garden he bought some rare kinds of roses and apple-trees. 11. Since selling his dog her grandpa has never had any pets. 12. At seeing him at the theatre she realised that he hadn't left for Paris. 13. At first he couldn't explain. After thinking it over he hit upon the explanation. 14. On hearing the tragic news, she fell at once into an alarming state of agitation. 15. In travelling abroad she has an opportunity to polish her English and Italian.

2. Complete the sentences using the gerund as adverbial modifier of time.

Hearing, answering, leaving, passing, looking, reading, racing.

1. She looked at the paper, after ... out this question. 2. Before ... the little old lady grasped his arm. 3. He spent those nights after ... at his mother's house in Green Street. 4. He found an endless excitement in ... at their faces and ... them speak. 5. Nick considered before 6. She seemed excited on... this. 7. Poirot had looked up at the staircase in..., and shook his head in a dissatisfied manner.

3. Paraphrase the sentences. Replace Participle I by an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

Model: While talking with her he felt excited. – In talking with her he felt excited.

1. Having found the house he rang the doorbell. 2. Seeing him in London I could hardly recognize him. 3. While crossing the street look out. 4. Having thought for a moment the man agreed to help me. 5. Hearing the song she remembered her childhood. 6. Turning the light on he saw a stranger in the room. 7. Seeing that the strap of her roller skate was loose she bent down and tightened it. 8. Entering the sports club I saw my old friend. 9. While crossing that bridge one has to walk and not drive. 10. Having heated the boiler she took a bath. 11. Seeing the policeman he ran downstairs to open the door. 12. One day returning to his hotel, he found a note in his room. 13. While writing his report, he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts. 14. Entering the room the girl glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men.

5. Paraphrase the sentences using gerunds or gerundial phrases as adverbial modifier of time.

Model: I phoned Ann and then I went out. After... – After phoning Ann I went out.

1. Tom went to bed but first he had a hot drink. Before 2. The plane took off and soon afterwards it crashed. Soon after 3. She smiled when she saw him. At 4. When I recognized the servant, I whistled softly to him. On 5. After I have a short rest I'll have my dinner. After 6. When I woke up I felt much better. On 7. Before we started we sent a telegram to our friends. Before 8. When I left Moscow I corresponded with him. After 9. When I reached Kiev I found waiting for me an urgent request that I should go to my mother's place. Upon 10. Robert turned round when he heard some steps. At 11. I called on my friend's before I left. Before 12. She was a trifle out of breath when she came to the third landing. On 13. When she had taken off her theatrical make-up she looked old and tired.

After 14. When Eva reached the restaurant she found that she was the last to arrive. Upon 15. When she had turned the last page she decided that she would read the book again. After 16. When he was giving his friend a wrong address I knew he was perhaps playing a trick on him. In 17. When I received her letter, I changed my mind. On 18. She looked through the photographs again before she put them back. Before

6. Supply the required prepositions for the gerunds used as adverbial modifiers of time.

1. He poured milk into a jug from a carton in the refrigerator, then drank some milk himself ... putting the carton back. 2. ... swimming we lolled around on the beach and lay in the sun. 3. ... arriving in the apartment, I found out they were planning a little party for me. 4. ... reading the stories by E. Hemingway he hasn't read anything in the original. 5. ... doing your research in Linguistics it's necessary to pick up a lot of examples from English books. 6. I left the dining-room ... paying my cheque, and went out into the lounge. 7. ... nearing his enemy he felt his heart leap with terror. 8. ... going to his chief's office, he looked through the messages on his desk. 9. ... seeing my friend in that place I stopped. 10. ... reading the manuscript, he finished writing his play. 11. ... their going on expeditions to the Urals he has been to Mount Everest twice. 12. ... being reminded of her promise to spend the weekend with her children she decided to take them to the fair. 13. ... her being sent a fax they usually send her a contract by mail. 14. ... their getting divorced their elder son married and lived on his own.

adverbial modifier of reason

As an adverbial modifier of reason the gerund is introduced by the prepositions *because of, for, from, for fear of, on account of, through, owing to.*

e.g. What will you do with him for deceiving her? He didn't open the letter for fear of reading something unpleasant.

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of reason. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of reason. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. What would people think of me for letting her go. 2. She and Penny didn't even mention her name in Edward's presence for fear of turning the knife in the wound. 3. The administration refused to pay the salary on account of the miners' being on strike. 4. Because of his spending a bomb on restaurants and taxis his family couldn't save any money. 5. He profoundly neglected the Press – not with the neglect which grows on writers from reading reviews of their own works. 6. They cancelled the train owing to the railway being blocked. 7. Mary couldn't prepare dinner for having no food at home. 8. He caught cold through getting his feet wet. 9. Sometimes Liza fell into light doze and Jim would keep very still for fear of waking her. 10. He was in hospital for having been run by a car. 11. He retired last month because of his mother being very ill. 12. The witness says that he couldn't let the man in on account of his being a stranger.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of reason.

Model: Mike didn't come to the party because he had to look after his brother. – Mike didn't come to the party for having to look after his brother.

1. He preferred to keep silent for fear that he might say something inopportune. 2. The staff got out of that terrible situation because the committee had supported the company. 3. Helen's grandmother disliked doing the shopping because she was afraid to be deceived. 4. The child couldn't sleep because his parents were having a party. 5. She didn't like to go out in the evenings as she was afraid to meet a drunkard. 6. They refused to take the course because it was too long. 7. Mary was often late for work because her alarm-clock was out of order. 8. He is slow to respond to new ideas because he is conservative. 9. He didn't find his wallet as he couldn't remember where he had put it. 10. Paul is pressed for money because he is not well paid. 11. Simon was fired because he was completely incompetent. 12. Little children are easily frightened when you teach them to ride a bike because they are afraid to fall down. 13. John avoided fighting a hooligan because he was scared to be beaten. 14. Ann started to cry when her

mother switched off the light because she was afraid to stay alone. 15. Very few students answered the question but not because it was too difficult. 16. El- len always arrives on time as her husband gives her a lift. 17. Andrew had to walk to the supermarket as he had no car. 18. Nora refused to go to the party because she was very busy.

adverbial modifier of manner

As an adverbial modifier of manner the gerund generally occurs with the prepositions *by, in* or *without*.

e.g. *Fools grow without watering. The morning was spent in painting the fence. You will achieve a lot by working hard.*

1. Point out the gerund or gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of manner. Note the preposition preceding the adverbial modifier of manner. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I'm going to spend the morning in walking on the beach. 2. She dressed without making a sound. 3. Harry got the address of this college by looking it up in a college directory. 4. In doing the shopping and cooking she passed the day. 5. He greeted me noisily, but I cut him short by giving him the telegram. 6. Ann couldn't run four kilometres without stopping. 7. You begin learning a language by listening to the new sounds. 8. It's impossible to dust the top shelf without standing on the stool. 9. The whole month was spent in looking for the burglars. 10. Mature students in Britain can get a grant by applying to the local government. 11. Can't you speak without raising your voice? 12. She spent the evening in reading an interesting book.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner. Choose the proper preposition.

Model: He is going to visit his friends in the morning. – He is going to spend the morning in visiting his friends.

Susan wanted to lose weight and she did. She ate less. 2. He spent the whole day having a drink in the bar. 3. Fred went out and looked for his first job and got it. 4. The film star killed herself. She took a bottle of sleeping pills. 5. It will take you three days to paper the walls in the living-room. 6. Bob got rich too. He married a rich woman. 7. Kate spent hours watching cartoons. 8. Children learn how to speak without teachers. They listen and they practise. 9. Face me, please. Otherwise you can't understand a word. 10. Richard often helps his brother. He gives him money and advice. 11. He did a repair job from time to time and managed to save some money. 12. They packed their things in the evening. 13. David learned how to play chess without a teacher. He watched his father play. 14. Get regular exercises and you can improve your physical condition. 15. When Hugo was in England he listened carefully and always spoke English. As a result, he learned perfect English. 16. Fred worked 16 hours a day and he got rich.

3. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of manner.

1. The problem can be solved by 2. I like my friend's manner of listening to me without 3. I'm going to spend some time in 4. A child can provoke his parents to punish him by 5. She spent the whole day in 6. I don't want to distress her by 7. You can get an excellent mark without 8. He awfully embarrassed his wife by 9. She improved her listening comprehension by 10. The morning was spent in 11. You can spoil the party by 12. She can pronounce tongue-twisters ten times without 13. Hours were spent in ... 14. She might save herself a lot of trouble by

adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances

As an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, besides, instead of*.

e.g. *He went out without looking back.*

Instead of being invited to the party he was sent on a business trip. Besides being clever she was always very industrious.

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I persuaded my uncle that it would be very good for my lungs if instead of staying at school I spent the following winter on the Riviera. 2. Then he left us without saying good-bye. 3. I found that besides being a philosopher he was an uncommonly good writer. 4. He bought pictures instead of buying me the things I wanted. 5. He put the letter away without reading it. 6. Instead of doing nothing go and help your little sister. 7. The burglars left through the window without anybody seeing them. 8. Why do you tuck your umbrella under your left arm instead of carrying it in your hand like anything else? 9. The cigarette burned down to my fingers and I threw it over the banister without putting it out. 10. She had many little things to do besides sitting idly in her house while waiting to be taken out by her boarder. 11. He wants to work in his study without his sons disturbing him. 12. Why did you go all round the field instead of walking across it?

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances

Model A: *She went out and didn't tell me anything – She went out without telling me anything.*

1. They came to the wedding. They were not invited. 2. He could tell the funniest joke. He didn't even smile. 3. She got married and nobody knew about it. 4. He translated the article and didn't use a dictionary. 5. She went out. She didn't switch off the iron. 6. He went out of the restaurant. He didn't pay the bill. 7. John brought us a bottle of French wine. He didn't take the money for it. 8. She left the house. She didn't lock the door. 9. She bought the dress and she didn't try it on. 10. He passed and didn't greet us. 11. The team won the game. They didn't have a good trainer. 12. She left and she didn't leave me a note.

Model B: *I didn't do my homework. I went to the cinema instead. – Instead of doing my homework I went to the cinema.*

1. She didn't punish the boy. She gave him a sweet instead. 2. He didn't help me. He kept bothering me instead. 3. She didn't get a pair of shoes. She got a pair of boots instead. 4. Nick didn't go hunting. He went fishing instead. 5. She didn't write a letter (as she had promised). She phoned instead. 6. They didn't look after the children properly. They went out five times a week. 7. He didn't bring me the radio. He brought me the record-player instead. 8. Buy a pair of sandals and don't wear high-heeled shoes in summer. 9. She didn't go to Italy. She went to Spain instead. 10. She didn't do the house. She went swimming instead. 11. You'd better buy a return ticket and not a one-way ticket. 12. Mary didn't go to a party. She went to a disco instead.

4. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

1. He took a bus into town instead of 2. She entered the room without 3. One can hardly get there without 4. He read a detective novel instead of 5. Tom was playing with his friends without 6. Americans like to eat out instead of 7. He chose a political career instead of 8. He is a chess player besides 9. Mike agreed with his parents without 10. Revise for your exam instead of 11. John and Sally coped with all their problems without 12. We got to the station just on time without Guess how much I paid for this jacket without 14. It would be more sensible for him to save his money instead of 15. Now that I've become more health-conscious, I'll always grill food instead of 16. She usually leaves the party without

adverbial modifier of concession

As an adverbial modifier of concession the gerund is preceded by the prepositions despite, in spite of.

e.g. *In spite of being tired, he continued working.*

I'm glad it's all turned out well despite your going behind my back.

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of concession. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of concession. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I don't ask any questions in spite of there being a lot of questions to ask. 2. He doesn't miss her despite not having seen her for a long time. 3. In spite of having been scolded she wasn't offended. 4. In spite of having spent the whole summer in the south, he is taken ill again. 5. Rob took his wife to the clinic despite her refusing to go there. 6. George got out of the difficulty in spite of not getting any help. 7. In spite of having been warned against it she decided to go out. 8. John went to his office in spite of being ill. 9. Paul managed to establish a new company despite his counterpart having let him down. 10. The University public didn't like the film despite its being a hit. 11. Despite being blinded in his right eye in a battle off Corsica, H. Nelson was soon made an admiral.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of concession expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

Model: Though she spends so much time on going to work she is never late. – She is never late despite spending so much time on going to work.

1. Although the weather was fine, he didn't go for a walk. 2. Although you are a little older than I, you belong essentially to the same generation. 3. Paul was considerably taller than she, though he wasn't big. 4. The words flowed from his pen, though he broke off from writing frequently to look up definitions in the dictionary. 5. The curtains were not yet drawn, though the lamps outside were lighted. 6. Although the sun had set, the heat hung heavy in the narrow street. 7. Though he spoke with a strong Russian accent his French was good enough. 8. Although it was only nine o'clock, there were few people in the streets. 9. Though the child was frightened she tried to pull herself together and calm him down. 10. Though his wife objected he sold the car to his friend. 11. Though she was very tired after work she decided to do the shopping. 12. The girl had no appetite though she had had no meal since morning. 13. The children liked their teacher though he was very demanding. 14. Jim couldn't compose music though he was good at playing the piano and the guitar. 15. I didn't see much of him though he lived nearby.

3. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of concession.

1. She took no notice of the boy in spite of 2. You can't interfere in this matter despite 3. Richard managed to find the thief despite 4. Laura refused to rewrite her test in spite of 5. He arrived on time despite 6. Steven didn't get the job in spite of 7. We have never gone for a holiday together despite 8. She couldn't sleep despite 9. Paul decided to go for a walk in spite of 10. Mr. Fish wasn't elected despite 11. They enjoyed the play despite 12. Mr. Snack liked fishing in spite of

adverbial modifier of condition

As an adverbial modifier of condition the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, but for, in case of, in the event of*.

e.g. *You will never speak good English without learning grammar.
But for meeting Mike, I shouldn't have become a doctor.*

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of condition. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of condition. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. You won't enrich your vocabulary without making use of an English dictionary. 2. But for having learned English when a student I wouldn't travel abroad now. 3. For any popular play you can't get tickets without booking them in advance. 4. In the event of their causing you any real trouble, give me a ring. 5. He wouldn't have visited us without being invited. 6. In case of the contract being checked by the expert you may sign it. 7. You can't have a nice holiday

without there being a river or a lake nearby. 8. The film director wouldn't shoot films every year but for being sponsored. 9. They would not have finished the work in time but for his helping them. 10. In case of getting the book let me know. 11. We can't have a meeting here without a table and fifty chairs being fetched.

2. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Choose the proper preposition.

Model: If you return the book you'll be allowed to borrow another one. – In case of returning the book you'll be allowed to borrow another one.

1. If she were not so stubborn, she wouldn't have argued with you yesterday. 2. If they send you a telex, answer them right away. 3. I shouldn't have believed it if I hadn't seen it with my own eyes. 4. If you meet her, give her my best regards. 5. If you have no true friends you may feel lonely. 6. Don't be upset if he refuses to back you. 7. They would have got lost if they hadn't read the map carefully. 8. If you find another way out, will you inform me? 9. If he asks for references, tell him to apply to me. 10. He would have missed the train if he hadn't taken a taxi. 11. If Charles hadn't wound up his watch he would have overslept yesterday. 12. I can't call them unless I get their number. 13. If we hadn't been such fools, we would all still be together. 14. I might have persuaded her to change her mind if she hadn't been so obstinate. 15. If my brother goes to the market with me he will help me to carry the bags. 16. If Helen were not in low spirits she would join you. 17. You can't prove anything if you don't have a solid alibi. 18. She wouldn't lose things so often if she were not so absent-minded. 19. He wouldn't have come if you hadn't invited him. 20. Carol will study at university if she gets a grant.

3. Complete the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by the preposition *but for* + a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

Model: 1) He would have more free time ... – He would have more free time but for having to go to work every day.

2) He would invite her to the party ... – He would invite her to the party but for their having had a row.

1. She would have noticed her mother-in-law 2. I wouldn't be able to tell you about the play now 3. The situation wouldn't have been so tragic 4. He would have paid attention to this matter 5. Alice wouldn't have a sore throat 6. Ann would have acted differently 7. He would have failed at the exam 8. Your mother wouldn't have been angry 9. She wouldn't feel so miserable 10. Susan wouldn't have married Peter 11. I would have joined you 12. He certainly would not have recognized me 13. We shouldn't have called a doctor 14. His eyesight wouldn't be poor now 15. She wouldn't have burst into tears 16. The father wouldn't have punished the child 17. He would go hiking with us 18. The child wouldn't have woken up 19. The actor wouldn't get the leading part 20. George wouldn't always lose his spectacles

adverbial modifier of purpose

An adverbial modifier of purpose follows the prepositions *for, for the purpose of, for the object of, with a view to*.

e.g. They often showed the students historical films for the purpose of giving them an idea of the past.

1. Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of purpose. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The story was changed for staging at the theatre. 2. He gave these instructions with a view to speeding up the shipment of the goods. 3. A Polish delegation arrived in Moscow for the object of conducting trade negotiations. 4. The Foreign Trade Arbitration Commission in Moscow has been established for the purpose of settling disputes between Russian trading organizations

and foreign firms. 5. With a view to improving his ability to speak French he spends his holiday in France. 6. The hall is used for dancing. 7. She often asks them to give her a lift for having a little word with them on her way home. 8. The police arrived for the purpose of investigating the crime. 9. The plane was coming in for landing. 10. The government passed a new law with the object of increasing an old age pension. 11. We take an umbrella for not being caught in the rain. 12. They went sightseeing with a view to taking some photographs of different places of interest.

2. Match the parts of the sentences. Choose the proper ad-verbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. They sent the papers	1. for buying a pair of shoes.
2. We go to a shoe department	2. with the object of doing what we liked.
3. My mother went to Germany	3. for the work being done secretly.
4. A scanner is used	4. for the clerk signing them.
5. The friends went to the pub	5. for having a gulp of fresh air.
6. He hunted for a creative job	6. with the object of studying it in detail.
7. They concealed the information	7. for visiting her relatives.
8. People go for a walk	8. for having a good time.
9. The doctors came to the place of accident	9. for examining things in hospitals, airports.
10. He bought a lot of books on painting	10. for rescuing people.

3. Paraphrase the sentences. Use an adverbial modifier of purpose.

Model: They went to Rome to see the sights. – They went to Rome for the purpose of seeing the sights.

1. I sent Mrs. Bacon a bunch of flowers to thank her for the party. 2. They listened to the news to get some more information about the accident. 3. We turned down the music not to disturb the neighbours. 4. Dick went to the post office to post a parcel. 5. We are organizing a “Fun Run” to raise money for the local hospital. 6. He drank lots of black coffee to keep awake. 7. He flirted with the girl to borrow some money from her. 8. We are installing solar heating to save energy. 9. I came to talk to you about a very important matter. 10. She took the pills regularly in order to get rid of her cough. 11. He went to the library to take the journals and books on history. 12. She always has a walk in the evening to sleep better at night. 13. Emma came to the house to look after everything herself. 14. Once a year John takes a week off to go on a fishing trip.

4. Complete the sentences using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. A ladder is used for 2. They often write letters to her with a view to 3. He painted the house himself for 4. You should read the novel in the original for 5. The government passed a new law with the object of 6. I phoned her for the purpose of 7. One should listen to English podcasts for 8. They switched on the radio with a view to 9. He went on business to Kyiv for the purpose of 10. They are building a new house for 11. Did you come to Spain for the purpose of ...? 12. He did it with a view to

Note

The Gerund and the Verbal Noun

The gerund should not be confused with the verbal noun, which has the same suffix *-ing*. While being derived from verbs, verbal nouns behave grammatically entirely as nouns, not as verbs. For example, they do not take direct objects as verbs can and they are modified by adjectives rather than adverbs. The verbal nouns may also be used as countable nouns and pluralized.

Comparison of the Gerund and the Verbal Noun

The Gerund	The Verbal Noun
has a double character – nominal and verbal	has only a nominal character
is not used with an article e.g.: <i>The cat enjoys <u>washing</u>.</i>	may be used with an article e.g.: <i>The <u>opening</u> of the new stadium took place on Monday.</i>
has no plural form e.g.: <i>Our <u>liking him</u> helped John a lot.</i>	may be used in the plural e.g.: <i>Our <u>likings</u> are regulated by our circumstances.</i>
The gerund of a transitive verb takes a direct object e.g.: <i>He won so many Oscar awards that he had given up <u>counting them</u>.</i>	Cannot take a direct object It takes a prepositional object with the preposition <i>of</i> . e.g.: <i>The <u>coming of the transistor</u> could not have been foreseen.</i>
May be modified by an adverb e.g.: <i>Reading, <u>even occasionally</u>, is a good thing.</i>	May be modified by an adjective e.g.: <i>Having arrived, he took <u>a good washing</u>.</i>

REVISION

1. State the syntactical function of the gerund, the gerundi- al phrase or the gerundial construction.

1. Paul took up his brush again and went on painting. 2. Before going in he looked in the window and the first thing he saw was a display of *When Pyramids Decay*. 3. It was no good pretending. 4. Most of our visit was spent in sightseeing. 5. I couldn't help laughing at the ease with which he explained his process of deduction. 6. This system has been working admirably for years without arousing any comment. 7. A cuckoo began calling from a thorn tree. 8. In the other hand he had the sharp knife which we used for cutting bacon. 9. Morel called her a fool for getting married, and was cool with his son-in-law. 10. He hated her being out of doors alone. 11. But the thought of parting with it now was more than Mrs. Bixby could bear. 12. Instead of sleeping at home, he's doing it here. 13. "If she thinks I'm going in after her without being asked, she's a bit wrong," said Frederick firmly to himself. 14. It grew worse as Alice grew up, for he soon saw I was more afraid of her knowing my past than of the police. 15. But there was no deceiving him. 16. It was like having a severe accident. 17. She enjoyed having Mr. Curry in the house. 18. They sat for some time longer in the sun, without speaking. 19. At any moment by turning the outside tap the room could be flooded with gas. 20. About this time the notorious Hell Row, which through growing old had acquired an evil reputation, was burned down, and much dirt was cleansed away. 21. At the door, after feeling in her purse and putting the key in the lock, she turned a moment and again raised her hand briefly. 22. Paying only three dollars for room rent seemed ridiculous. 23. Was it because you wouldn't prove an alibi for fear of compromising somebody in extremely high-toned society? 24. I think it's worth finding out what it is. 25. There's no knowing what it might be, my dear. We shall just have to wait and see. 26. I came with Jack Brendon yesterday, instead of going to work, and enlisted. 27. Mr. Thornhill said "cheers" several times and then suddenly burst out laughing. 28. Clara saw Paul's manner of bowing

and shaking hands. 29. I took my weapon and bravely started walking. 30. It was like hunting in some wild place. 31. Mr. Curry had finished washing up and was resting his reddened wet hands upon the rim of the sink. 32. In uttering those words he was conscious of a girl coming down from the common just above them. 33. It was no good being impatient with him.

2. Paraphrase the sentences using the gerunds. Use prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

Model: *They told the truth. You shouldn't deny it. – You shouldn't deny their telling the truth.*

1. I'd like to speak to you frankly. I hope you don't mind it. 2. I was prepared to dislike Mr. Matthew even before I met him. 3. She is admitted to our closed circle. I object to it. 4. He was not only the author of brilliant short stories, but he was also a talented playwright. 5. That I was on the spot was a bit of luck for her. 6. After he had studied the weather forecast in great detail, he said he would go back to Paris. 7. She accepted the proposal. Her mother was displeased with it. 8. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary that he hated the thought that he would have to live there. 9. I regret that I said you were mistaken. 10. When I came back from work my son gave me a strange note. 11. It is necessary to mend the shoes. 12. He suggested that we should spend the day in the country. 13. Why do you insist that he should leave for Italy? 14. We are looking forward to the fact that you will spend the summer with us. 15. Marry is unable to resist chocolates. It's funny. 16. This woman's face attracted his attention as familiar for he remembered that she had passed by him several times. 17. I don't like the idea that I should go there. 18. We have no objections. She can take a holiday right now. 19. He didn't leave the house because he was afraid that he would meet someone who would recognize him. 20. There was little hope that we would catch up with them. 21. She regretted that she had told Ann her secret. 22. I told him a lie. I admit it. 23. You shouldn't risk your health like that. It's no good. 24. Nick wasn't sure that she would come because she hadn't phoned him. 25. One can't sell some foodstuffs if one doesn't wrap them up. 26. We knocked at the door, and we were admitted to the hall. 27. She was very clever; she could turn an old dress into a new one. 28. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat if we didn't pay the rent. 29. He is responsible that the letter is delivered only today. 30. They decided to spend their honeymoon in Florida though their parents disapproved of the idea. 31. She has no wish to do the flat every week. 32. If he were not a drunkard his wife and his children wouldn't suffer. 33. The house is too old and they will insist that it should be restored. 34. Everybody interfered in her affairs and that bothered her. 35. She passed her exams successfully. She was pleased with it. 36. I am really ashamed that I haven't written to you for so long. 37. I am disappointed. He is mixed up in some unpleasant affair again. 38. Jane boasted that she had bathed in the Mediterranean and in the Atlantic Ocean. 39. It is very strange but John denied that they had called at a number of European ports.

4. Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. There cannot be any objection ... your seeing her personally. 2. Martha succeeded ... writing historical novels. 3. Tom dropped into a chair ... saying anything. 4. She denied ... having asked Albert to invite us. 5. You spoiled everything ... being rude. 6. You can't have omelettes ... breaking eggs. 7. He put ... making a decision till he had more information. 8. Please forgive me... interrupting you but would you mind ... repeating that last sentence. 9. He was very much worried over the possibility ... his plans being upset. 10. If you won't tell me, what's wrong, what's the use ... my being here? 11. In many countries of the Middle East husbands prevent their wives ... taking a job outside the home. 12. In spite ... being in danger Harold decided to tell the truth. 13. Maybe, he is surprised ... being much spoken of. 14. Some people seem to have a passion ... writing to the newspapers. 15. He was furious ... being mistaken for an escaped convict. 16. Newton, the famous scientist, was sometimes engaged ... working out difficult problems. 17. She was afraid ... going on public transport. 18. I hadn't asked for advice; I was quite capable... advising myself. 19. What are your reasons ... refusing their invitation? 20. The others insisted ... accompanying them. 21. Most people who spend a holiday ... travelling take a camera with them. 22. They insisted ... the children being taken to the

mountains. 23. I'm extremely fond ... travelling and feel terribly envious of any friend who is going anywhere. 24. He has no intention ... touring the country on foot. 25. She demonstrated an unusual skill ... gathering mushrooms. 26. She laughed at the thought ... Johnny looking after the house. 27. We see no importance ... spending so much time discussing the route of the trip. 28. We rely ... being informed about the flight. 29. I do apologize ... not letting you know before. 30. I'm very sorry ... losing my temper last night. 31. ... being interrupted by his wife he managed to tell the story from beginning to end. 32. We walked very carefully through the grass as we were scared ... being bitten by a snake. 33. The teacher was ignorant ... the students cribbing off each other. 34. You can make her happy ... her son being given back to her. 35.... doing your aerobics it's good to have a shower. 36. They rejected our request and doing so they achieved their own goal. 37. She is unconscious her father having watched every step of hers. 38. There is no sense ... flattering her. 39. The use of such techniques resulted ... developing computer technology. 40. On board a big ship there is a library, a cinema-hall, billiard rooms which are used entertaining the passengers.

5. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. State the syntactical function of the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction.

1. He has only a one in ten chance of being reunited with his family. 2. The dean didn't object to raising the scholarship. 3. A vagrant is a person who has no home or money, and who lives by going from place to place and begging or stealing. 4. On being reminded of her promise to spend the weekend with her children she decided to take them to the fair. 5. Don's business was repairing furniture. 6. There was no pleasing Mike's wife. 7. I don't feel like going out. 8. My elder brother kept on laughing at me. 9. The boy felt embarrassed for deceiving his parents. 10. Instead of following in his father's steps he chose a political career. 11. Despite being interrupted by his wife he managed to tell the story from beginning to end. 12. In her thirties she had no difficulty in finding jobs. 13. Thank you for supporting us. 14. My first thought was giving them a call. 15. It's no good watching TV for hours. 16. After coming back home she had a bite and gave a ring to her friend. 17. Derek couldn't come because of having been sent to Liverpool. 18. There is little hope of getting this CD. 19. I'll never forget being taken to the Rotary Club. 20. He managed to paint her portrait without using her photo. 21. Since reading the stories by E. Hemingway he hasn't read anything in the original. 22. He gave up drinking and started a new life. 23. Having a short break is quite necessary. 24. I don't think the man deserves punishing. 25. The most important thing for him was starting his own business. 26. At seeing him at the theatre she realized that he hadn't left for London. 27. Brian never spent his weekend without having a drink in a pub. 28. There's no accounting for his pessimism. 29. The next step was choosing the right direction. 30. The whole month was spent in looking for the burglars. 31. It will make all the difference inviting this couple for lunch. 32. The company bought three cottages with a view to letting them in summer. 33. Susan took to going to the sports club. 34. In case of getting the book let me know. 35. In spite of listening to English tapes for hours he couldn't get rid of his accent. 36. Without having a computer you can't get the necessary information. 37. Every week Laura sent him a letter for giving him emotional support. 38. Before buying a PC ask for an expert's advice. 39. He didn't tell you about it for fear of being accused of the crime. 40. Our daughter was enjoying the experience of living alone.

THE PARTICIPLE

The participle is a non-finite form of the verb which has a verbal and an adjectival or an adverbial character. Present participles can be used as adjectives, as part of participial phrases, and to form continuous verb tenses.

There are two forms of the Participle in English — Participle I and Participle II (the Present Participle and the Past Participle). Participles have the grammatical categories of voice and tense

correlation.		
	Active	Passive
Non-Perfect Participle (Participle I)	asking	being asked
Past Participle (Participle II)	---	asked
Perfect Participle	having asked	having been asked

1. The category of voice correlation

Participle I active denotes an action directed from the doer of the action, while Participle I passive denotes an action directed towards it.

a) **Participle I** has special forms to denote **the Active and Passive Voice**.

When writing letters, she doesn't like to be disturbed.

Being written in pencil, the letter was difficult to read.

Having written the letter, he went to the post-office.

Having been written long ago, the manuscript was impossible to read.

b) **Participle II** of transitive verbs, when it is not part of a perfect form, is always passive in meaning.

Some pieces of broken glass were lying on the floor.

Participle II of intransitive verbs is always active in meaning and corresponds to the Ukrainian active participle of the perfective aspect: arrived – *прибувний*, faded – *засохлий*.

2. The category of tense correlation

The tense distinctions of the participle are not absolute but relative.

Participle I Indefinite Active and Passive usually denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb; depending on the tense-form of the finite verb it may refer to the present, past, or future.

e. g. Do you see the child waving the flag?

Perfect Participle (Active and Passive) shows that the action named by the Participle preceded that of the finite verb. Its forms denote priority to a present, past or future action.

Having explained everything, I want to tell you how sorry I *am*.

Having finished the letter, he *went* to the post office.

Having settled the problem, you *will find* something new to worry about.

Note: A prior action is not always expressed by the Perfect Participle with some verbs of sense perception: *to see, to look, to hear, to find*; motion: *to come, to enter, to arrive, to turn, to leave*; and verbs of certain specific actions associated with motion: *to put, to put on, to take, to take off, to seize, to grasp, to open*.

Hearing footsteps he rose and went to open the door.

Turning to his sister, he grasped her hand.

The Perfect Participle of the same verbs is used when there is a lapse of time between the two actions, or when the action denoted by the Participle is durative.

Seeing Molly, he rushed to greet her. But: **Having seen** her only once, he didn't recognize her. **Not having seen** her for a long time, he didn't recognize her.

b) **Participle II** has no tense distinctions; it has only one form which can express both an action simultaneous with and prior to the action expressed by the finite verb. In most cases it denotes priority or refers to no particular time.

He *is* a man **loved** and **admired** by everybody.

She *took* the long **forgotten** letter out of the bag.

3. The voice distinctions of the participle.

Participle I of transitive verbs has special forms to denote the active and the passive voice.

When writing letters he does not like to be disturbed.

Being written in pencil the letter was difficult to make out.

Having written some letters he went to post them.

Having been written long ago the manuscript was illegible.

Participle II of transitive verbs has a passive meaning, e. g. *a broken glass, a caged bird*. Participle II of intransitive verbs has no passive meaning; it is used only in compound tense-forms and has no independent function in the sentence unless it belongs to a verb which denotes passing into a new state, e. g. *a withered flower, a faded leaf*

1. Translate the following words and phrases into English.

1. розбита чашка; 2. програна гра; 3. розірваний конверт; 4. команда, що програла; 5. команда, що програє; 6. кип'ячена вода; 7. вода, що кипить; 8. забутий метод; 9. людина, що забула (раніше); 10. собака, що гавкає; 11. випробуваний метод; 12. смажена риба; 13. смажена риба; 14. кіт, що зістрибнув на стіл; 15. собака, що стрибає; 16. вкрадена ложка; 17. голос, що сміється; 18. сміється дівчина; 19. обрана тема; 20. печена картопля; 21. загублений шанс; 22. знайдене рішення; 23. спортсмен, що виграв; 24. написаний лист; 25. зів'ялі троянди; 26. трава, що зів'яла; 27. прибула делегація; 28. згадані факти; 29. порвані штани; 30. зниклий чоловік; 31. вбитий павук; 32. вимита підлога; 33. з'їдений торт; 34. діти, що танцюють; 35. втрачений час; 36. вкрадений мільйон; 37. корабель, що пливе; 38. будучи запрошеним; 39. сидячи біля вогню; 40. викинувши сміття; 41. бігаючи по двору; 42. знаючи його добре; 43. переписуючи завдання; 44. розбомблена будівля; 45. перелякана дитина; 46. чесно зароблені гроші.

2. Give all possible forms of Participle I of the following verbs:

to come, to forget, to read, to write, to look, to wait, to ring, to think, to sleep, to go, to laugh, to give.

3. State whether the action expressed by Participle I is prior or simultaneous with the action of the verb-predicate.

1. I kept silence for a little while, thinking of what my mother had told me. 2. But I wasn't listening, absorbing the atmosphere of canvases I now knew so well. 3. She was lying in the dark, listening to a violin being played several rooms away. 4. "Tea," I said, setting the big white cup in front of him. 5. Buttoning her raincoat up to her throat and knotting a scarf round her hair she went to Victoria Street. 6. Getting up, I ran impulsively across the room and flung my arms round her neck. 7. She is working in a laundry on the East Side, trying to keep her child's body and soul together. 8. Stella stood openly waiting with the look of one for whom the ordinary rules did not apply. 9. Listening with sympathy, watching the play of light upon those clean-cut features, Stephen was conscious of a deep surge of affection for his brother. 10. One evening in the following spring Mr. Green, having shut up his shop, took his customary stroll towards the road. 11. Gripping his bag, Manson leaped from the train and walked quickly down the platform, searching eagerly for some sign of welcome. 12. I was sitting in the café, reading a newspaper. 13. I wandered about looking at the pictures I knew so well and let my fancy play idly at the emotions they suggested. 14. Turning back to the first page he wrote at the top: "Ballet Shoes". 15. "Why did you invite Barry?" Ann Brown asked, reddening. 16. A moment later the other sailor climbed beside him, then both stood idly smoking and talking.

4.

a) Make new sentences using Participle I Non-Perfect Active.

Model: We thought we had been late for the train. We went home. – Thinking we had been late for the train, we went home.

1. The secretary tried to get to the office on time. She drove too fast and got a ticket. 2. I knew the director had already left. I didn't try to call his office. 3. Kate didn't understand the theme. She didn't attend her classes. 4. She is a little deaf. She wears hearing-aid. 5. I didn't know his address. I couldn't contact him. 6. Mr. Smith is on the Board of Directors. He makes very important decisions. 7. Dick burnt himself. He was baking an apple pie. 8. Janet works for an advertising agency. She has the opportunity to meet many interesting people. 9. The old man was walking along the street. He was talking to himself. 10. I'll be a member of the country club; I'll be able to use a golf course next summer. 11. The man slipped. He was getting off the bus. 12. We considered the rising cost of gasoline. We thought about buying a small car. 13. He got off his horse. He began searching something on the ground.

b) Make new sentences using Participle I Non-Perfect Passive.

Model: This car is now sold everywhere. It's very much in demand. – Now being sold everywhere, this car is very much in demand.

1. Our company is highly centralized; it operates very efficiently. 2. These sweaters are made by hand; they are more expensive than the other brands. 3. He was exhausted by his work; he threw himself on his bed. 4. English is spoken in many countries; it's a useful language to know. 5. The speaker refused to continue; he was interrupted by the interruptions. 6. The new benefit plan wasn't approved by the director; it had to be revised. 7. Insurance premiums won't be paid by the company; they'll be deducted from the employee's paycheck. 8. They were impressed by the duel scene in "Hamlet"; they were silent on the way home. 9. The plane was delayed by technical problems. It took off one hour later.

c) Make new sentences using Participle I Perfect Active.

Model: I had read that book a lot of times. I had no desire to reread it. – Having read the book a lot of times, I had no desire to reread it.

1. I had heard that the caves were dangerous. I didn't like to go any further without a light. 2. The pilot had travelled only a short distance from Heathrow. He decided to turn back. 3. I had seen the film several times. I didn't want to go to the cinema. 4. We barricaded the windows. We discussed our plan. 5. The criminal removed all traces of the crime. He left the building. 6. He had spent all his money. He decided to go home and ask his father for a job. 7. He found his revolver. He loaded it. He sat down facing the door. 8. He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner.

a) Make new sentences using Participle I Perfect Passive.

Model: She had been asked that question a lot of times. She knew the answer very well. – Having been asked that question a lot of times. She knew the answer very well.

1. Tom had been seriously injured; he spent a month in hospital. 2. The problem hadn't been discovered in time; it couldn't be solved before year-end. 3. This machine hasn't been used for years; it should be replaced by a modern one. 4. The applicants have been screened by the personnel director, they all have the necessary qualifications. 5. The car has been washed already. It's very clean.

5. Use Participle I in the appropriate form instead of the infinitive in brackets.

1. I saw Blanche little by little (to try) all her tricks. 2. She smiled (to remember) the joke. 3. I came down here, (to think) that I would get over it. 4. She drank deeply, and, (to do) so, sighed with satisfaction. 5. Again the hands rose eloquently, (to express) better than words could do Mr. Hercule Poirot's sense of utter outrage. 6. And (to do) this he threw himself back on the sofa. 7. "This is your grandmother," Ann was saying (to touch) the boy's hair gently. 8. (To be) so far away he still feels himself part of the community. 9. The boy came out of the water (to shake) from top to toe. 10. (To support) her by the arm he helped her out of the taxi. 11. He decided to speak to her in the train (to come) home. 12. The next minute the front door was flung open and he was in the lighted hall (to greet) by a short, plump, smiling woman of about forty. 13. (to invite) down to this place for a visit, he found himself requested by his host to go and tell his uncle bedtime stories. 14. I stood for a moment at the window, (to look) at the gaiety of the day. 15. (to finish) his toilet, he wrapped himself in a thick overcoat and wound a muffler round his neck. 16. And (to reach) the conclusion, he gave no further thought to the matter. 17. That night, (to go) up to his room he thought of his unpleasant duty. 18. He turned (to inspect) me from beneath his enormous eyebrows. 19. A new road will soon be built (to connect) the plant with the railway station. 20. He speaks like a man (to take) his opinion of everything. 21. (Not to know) that she could trust them she did not know what to do. 22. Sam, feeling that the interview, (to reach) this point might be considered over, got up. 23. I spent about ten minutes (to turn) over the sixteen pages of *The Guardian* before I found the main news and articles.

6. Use the proper form of Participle I in brackets.

1. (to do) his homework, he was thinking hard. 2. (to do) his homework, he went for a walk. 3. (to sell) fruit, he looked back from time to time, hoping to see his friends. 4. (to sell) all the fruit, he went to see his friends. 5. (to eat) all the potatoes, she drank a cup of tea. 6. (to drink) tea, she scalded her lips. 7. (to run) in the yard, I fell and hurt my knee. 8. (to look) through some magazines, I came across an interesting article about UFOs. 9. (to write) out and (to learn) all the new words, he was able to translate the text easily. 10. (to live) in the south of Russia, he cannot enjoy the beauty of St. Petersburg's White Nights in summer. 11. (to talk) to her neighbour in the street, she did not notice how a thief stole her money. 12. (to read) the story, she closed the book and put it on the shelf. 13. (to buy) some juice and cakes, we went home. 14. (to sit) near the fire, he felt very warm.

7. Use the appropriate form of Participle I of the verb in brackets.

1. Poirot and I behaved in the customary fashion of people (to show) over houses. 2. I felt a bitter envy towards the two small boys (to walk) along the path. 3. (to greet) her, he turned the key in the only door with a certain skill. 4. (to have) tea she went early to Victoria Station. 5. There was a noise of curtain-rings (to run) back along the rods, of water (to splash) in the basins. 6. She had a pale face and dark hair (to turn) grey. 7. (to pick up) his coat, he walked on into the field. 8. The dog Balthazar, (to walk) round the three small flower-beds, had also taken a seat in front of old Jack. 9. He and Sam stood in the drawing-room (to wait). 10. Not for one moment did he show surprise at the wedding gift (to present) to him personally. 11. (to dry) his hands, Tom came across from the washstand. 12. (to lift) the telephone, Peter asked for the director. 13. She had a hand on his shoulders and was including herself in the pictures (to take). 14. He crossed the room to the long buffet (to stand) beside the girl he picked up a sandwich. Then, (to turn) and (to speak) nervously and with an effort he said, «I say, do you mind if I speak to you?» 15. (to think) this, with some comfort, she fell asleep. 16. (to see) Fleur and his grandson off to the sea that morning, he felt flat. 17. Miss Lindsey, (to see) Rose, smiled. 18. Miss Swiss poured out another cup of tea for herself, and (to taste) it, plunged into further confidences. 19. (to walk) alongside, Dan inclined his head towards the building they had left. 20. (to jump) down from the stairs, he went over to the driver.

8. Paraphrase the sentences so as to use the right form of Participle I.

Model: *The girl wept because she was upset. – Being upset, the girl wept.*

1. She blushed because she was embarrassed. 2. I left the party early because I felt out of place. 3. The little boy tore his trousers when he climbed up the tree. 4. The students were bored so they started to fidget. 5. I was caught unawares and I was at a loss for words. 6. She was unable to sleep so she took a couple of sleeping pills. 7. The police couldn't make an arrest as they didn't have enough evidence. 8. The children had to go back to school because the holidays were over. 9. As I'd already eaten, I wasn't hungry. 10. After the Prime Minister had lost the election, he resigned. 11. As I'd enjoyed the book, I decided to see the film. 12. He had to climb through the window because he had lost the key. 13. I don't know whether I like it or not because I haven't tried it before. 14. Now that the student has passed First Certificate, she's hoping to take the Proficiency. 15. As she has been late for work every day, she's in danger of losing her job.

The functions of Participle I in the sentence.

Participle I may have different syntactic functions.

1. Participle I as an **attribute**.

*e.g. We admired the stars **twinkling in the sky**.*

In some cases, Participle I in the function of an attribute is rendered in Ukrainian by a clause.

*e.g. He came back and stood irresolute on the steps **leading down to the street**. (Cusack)*

In the function of an attribute Participle I can be in pre-position and in post-position, i. e. it can precede

the noun it modifies and follow it.

2. Participle I as an **adverbial modifier**.

All the forms of Participle I may be used as an adverbial modifier. Participle I Indefinite expresses an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb.

Participle I Perfect, expresses an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.

Participle I can be an adverbial modifier: of time, of cause, of comparison, of manner and attendant circumstances.

3. Participle I as **predicative (part of the compound nominal predicate)**

e.g. The effect of her words was terrifying.

4. Participial phrase as **parenthesis**.

e.g. Generally speaking, I don't like being interrupted.

Participle I as attribute

This function is peculiar to non-Perfect Participle I in its main sense, that of a process simultaneous with the action denoted by the main verb or with the moment of speech.

When a participial phrase is used as attribute it follows the modified noun.

Here is the telegram announcing his arrival. Вот телеграмма, извещающая о его приезде.

When a single participle is used in the sentence as attribute, it generally functions as a premodifier. Here we usually find only Participle I active of intransitive verbs

He came up to the crying child.

Note: The perfect form of Participle I is not used in the function of the attribute. In such cases an attributive clause is used. *I don't know the man who brought the note yesterday.*

In the function of an attribute, the present participle can be detached or non-detached.

Participle I can be used like an adjective, to say more about people or things..

1. Replace the attributive clauses by Participle I.

Model: *The boy who is sitting on the bench is her brother. – The boy sitting on the bench is her brother.*

1. The man who is speaking now is our new secretary. 2. The apparatus that stands on the table in the corner of the laboratory is quite new. 3. The young man who helps the professor in his experiments studies at an evening school. 4. People who take books from the library must return them in time. 5. There are many pupils in our class who take part in the performance. 6. All the people who live in this house are students. 7. Ben followed her across the lawn to the table which stood in the shade of a fine tree. 8. I noticed as we walked along the street that sometimes the men who passed us stared at my girlfriend. 9. It was a long, wide, straight street that ran parallel with the Vaux-hall Bridge. 10. The pupils who laugh at their classmates' mistakes should be reprimanded. 11. The girl who was standing below the balcony seemed to be waiting for somebody. 12. The little boy who is waiting downstairs is your daughter's classmate, he wants to tell you something urgent.

2. Replace the construction with Participle I by an attributive clause:

Model: *The boy sitting on the bench is her brother. – The boy who is sitting on the bench is her brother.*

1. He recalled a fascinating figure, reminding him of Titian's «Heavenly Love». 2. The door opened, but into a little space leading to another door. 3. The word coming from the very bottom of his soul, broke up the dinner. 4. There came the young man hurrying away. 5. A subdued light radiated from a single green-paper-shaded bulb hanging in the centre. 6. Look at the people ploughing in that field. I do love horses moving slowly against a skyline of trees. 7. Clare was silent, and Sir Lawrence, watching her, thought: «Attractive, but a lot of naughty temper.» 8. There was a fire burning, and one candle burning in the room. 9. Clare shook her head, and a dark curl fell over her forehead, reminding Denny of her as a child. 10. Their room had two

curtained windows looking over the street, a couch with cushions, an almost empty bookcase and some photographs of the family standing on it.

3. Transform the following sentence so as to use attributive clauses.

Model: *At ten o'clock he found himself in the train speeding towards London. – At ten o'clock he found himself in the train which was speeding towards London.*

1. He went to the parlour, where the doctor, standing on the hearthrug with his back to the fire, greeted him. 2. The place was crowded with doctors and their wives, talking and laughing. 3. I've just had a letter from my aunt asking me to go down to her place and stay. 4. It was quite dark and she didn't recognize the man standing in front of her. 5. We passed into a large sunny apartment looking out towards the sea. 6. Most people living in out-of-the-way places when the mail comes tear open impatiently their papers. 7. A little way off he saw his wife talking with the Davidsons and he strolled over to her. 8. He picked up a chattering acquaintance with several persons living in his hotel and he was not lonely. 9. There were people passing to and fro and he joined one of the groups. 10. It appears he caught sight of a man behaving suspiciously.

4. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an attribute.

1. He saw a man 2. He came up to the child 3. He went along the street 4. The room was crowded with students 5. There were people 6. He caught sight of a girl 7. He received a telegram 8. Don't be very noisy, you'll wake up the child

5. Translate the sentences into English

1. Він уважно дивився на хлопчика, який сидів на стільці біля вікна. 2. Дівчина, яка читала книжку, раптом встала і вийшла з кімнати. 3. Книжки, які лежать на столі, належать моєму батькові. 4. Вони вийшли на дорогу, яка вела до лісу. 5. Машина, яка слідувала за нами, була зеленого кольору. 6. старий, який працював у саду, не відразу помітив мене. 7. Високий чоловік, що стоїть біля вікна, колись працював із моїм батьком. 8. Ми приєдналися до Марроу, який стояв біля готелю і чекав на нас. 9. Кожен, хто бажає навчитися плавати, може приходити в басейн щоп'ятниці. 10. Хлопчика, який розбив вікно, звали Том. 11. Туристи, які відвідують наше місто, як правило, живуть у цьому готелі. 12. студенти, які читали цей текст, кажуть, що він важкий для перекладу. 13. Він помітив, що джентльмен, який пристально дивився на нього, робить йому якісь знаки. 14. Вони жили в будинку, що належав її бабусі. 15. Він дивився на людей, які проходили повз його будинок. 16. Деревя, що ростуть перед нашим будинком, посаджені моїм дідом. 17. Людина, яка принесла лист від Артура, хотіла поговорити з нами наодинці. 18. Мері, яка перекладала статтю, навіть не глянула на мене. 19. Студенти, які чекали на вас, щойно пішли. 20. Потім він подивився на картину, що висіла на стіні, і запитав, де я її купив. 21. Вони часто думали про своїх друзів, які працювали у Франції.

Participle I as predicative

The present participle can function as part of the compound nominal predicate with various link verbs. In the position of predicative only non-Perfect Participle I active occurs. Although keeping the form of the participle, it is treated as an adjective, or a deverbal adjective.

e.g. The effect of her words was terrifying.

1. Complete the sentences using Participle I as predicative.

1. Great heavy tears ran down her face, and her quietness was terribly (to move). 2. Tom was slim and graceful in his long white trousers. She had never seen him smoke a pipe. It was strangely (to touch). 3. I hate seeing you pay the bill when we go out to supper. It's so (to humiliate). 4. The sight of the stormy sea was (to terrify). 5. The examining board expected this student to give

a good answer, but the answer was (to disappoint). 6. The USA is a big country. The climate contrasts are quite (to strike). 7. Bob prefers mountain scenery to plains. It's always (to excite). 8. The rare varieties of the flowers in the meadow and the wood were (to astonish), saying nothing of the beautiful lake. 9. The children sat round the fire. Friendly stars were twinkling overhead, but the dark hills round the valley seemed (to frighten). 10. The "park-like" appearance of Great Britain is (to strike).

2. Complete the sentences with the participles from the box. Never use any participle more than once.

Model: The film "Universe" is so exciting, I advise you to see it.

astonishing	boring	convincing	demanding	disappointing	worrying	exciting	thrilling
tempting	disconcerting	touching	humiliating	encouraging	mocking	terrifying	

1. Your suggestion to miss the classes at university today sounds very.... 2. I don't believe you to have done it deliberately. But anyway, it was extremely 3. The situation became so ... that we all were at a loss. 4. Her gravity was not severe and ... like a school teacher's, but warm and... as a mother's. 5. When the chairman speaks of devotion to high ideals in business, he is quite ... and even 6. The performance was so ... that I could hardly stay till the end of it. 7. That she can't remember the origin of her information seems very unusual and ..., inspector. 8. The effect of the manager's words was 9. I should say, your last trip to investigate the tribes in the Amazon basin has been dangerous. Even to listen to the story of your adventures is really 10. It's ... to me that Mr. Lincoln didn't understand your mission. His voice sounded ..., and the tone in which he spoke with you was so

3. Answer the questions using Participle I as predicative.

1. Does it sound tempting for you to miss a class of English? 2. It's rather confusing when somebody calls you by name, and you don't remember who he or she is, isn't it? 3. Sharon Stone is very charming, isn't she? 4. Does it sometimes become rather annoying for you to listen to heavy metal being played by your roommates all night when you are getting ready for your exam? 5. Life seems extremely boring when there is nothing interesting to do. Do you share this opinion? 6. The weather becomes depressing when it's been raining all day long, doesn't it? 7. Is it really disgusting when the kitchen hasn't been cleaned for ages? 8. I know Jack didn't enjoy the last night's football match. Did it happen to be less exciting than he had expected? 9. It's sometimes embarrassing when you have to ask people for money, isn't it? 10. Would it be amazing for you to get a job of an advertising manager right after graduating from university?

PARTICIPLE I AS ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of time.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of time may denote a simultaneous or a prior action. Most often it is a participle of the verbs of motion (come, walk, go, etc.) or position in space (sit, lie, stand, etc.)

Walking along the river, she burst into song.

Standing at the window, he went on messaging.

As an adverbial modifier of time Participle I may be preceded by the conjunctions *when, while*:
When listening to her I understood that she was upset. Слушая ее, я понял, что она расстроена.

Participle I passive in this function usually denotes priority.

Being left alone, the children fell asleep.

Note: Participle I being (from *to be*) is not used as an adverbial modifier of time, we use «while-phrase» or a clause instead.

e.g. While in London (= while I was in London) I visited Buckingham Palace.

1. Replace the adverbial clauses of time by Participle I.

1. Be careful *when you cross a street*. 2. *When you leave the room*, don't forget to switch off the light. 3. *When you begin to work with the dictionary*, don't forget my instructions. 4. *When they were travelling in Central Africa*, the explorers met many wild animals. 5. *When you copy English texts*, pay attention to the articles. 6. You must have much practice *when you are learning to speak a foreign language*. 7. *When you speak English*, pay attention to the intonation.

2. Replace the adverbial clauses of time by Participle I.

1. *When I entered the room*, I felt some change in the atmosphere at once. 2. *When we had finally reached the river*, we decided to stay there and wait for the others. 3. *When I reached out in the darkness*, I felt a stone wall where I expected to find the door. 4. *When she opened the parcel*, she saw a large box of pencils. 5. *When they had finally opened the safe*, they found that most of the papers had gone. 6. *When she closed the suitcase*, she put it on the bed. 7. *When she had closed and locked the suitcase*, she rang for the porter to come and take it downstairs. 8. *When she had cut the bread*, she started to make the coffee.

3. Replace the adverbial clauses of time by Participle I.

1. *As she had been walking most of the night*, she felt tired and sleepy. 2. *When I take a child to the circus*, I always know I'm going to enjoy myself. 3. *As I had never seen anything like that before*, I was eager to see the performance. 4. *When he had passed the last examination*, he began to look round for a job. 5. *When he had drunk his second cup of coffee*, he folded the newspaper and rose. 6. *Whenever she spoke on the subject*, she was liable to get all hot and bothered. 7. *When I had finally made up my mind*, I told my parents about my new plans. 8. *As she had spent most other housekeeping money*, she reluctantly decided to go home. 9. *As she had not had any lunch*, she wanted her tea badly. 10. *When I spoke to her* I always tried to make my meaning clear. 11. *When we were playing chess that evening*, we kept watching each other. 12. *When she had taken the children to school*, she could go and do shopping.

4. Replace Participle I by an adverbial clause of time:

1. Bob, *hearing her*, turned a sleepish eye upon her. 2. *Resuming the tune on his pipe*, Adrian stole several glances at his silent neighbour. 3. *Reaching the hotel at Knights-bridge*, he went to their sitting-room, and rang for tea. 4. *Arriving at the Gallery off Cork Street*, however, he paid his shilling, picked up a catalogue, and entered. 5. *Nodding to her husband*, she went over to her father. 6. He opened the door, *and closing it softly*, detained Sam on the inner mat. 7. *So saying*, he left her and turned towards Soho. 8. *Opening the window*, he went out to the terrace. 9. *Going up to the dressing-table*, he passed his hand over the lilac-coloured pin-cushion.

5. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of time.

1. He wrote the letter 2. When ... I visited all the museums there. 3. While ... you must be very attentive. 4. ... I realize that it was wrong. 5. I met a friend of mine

6. Translate into English using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of time

1. Він непомітно задрімав, сидячи в кріслі під деревом. 2. Увійшовши в кімнату, вона відразу ж побачила там Тома. 3. Зачинивши двері, він підійшов до письмового столу. 4. Я знову зустрів його на кораблі після повернення додому. 5. Закривши тихо двері, він вийшов у сад. 6. Поглянувши на зачинені двері, молодий чоловік підійшов ближче. 7. Коли він голився, він раптом згадав, що вона назвала своє дівоче прізвище. 8. Вони

увійшли до кімнати, голосно розмовляючи. 9. Знявши стару сукню, вона одягла нову. 10. Подивившись униз, він побачив свого сина з друзями.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of cause (reason).

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of cause (reason) can be expressed by all the four forms. The most frequently used is non-perfect Participle I of verbs denoting mental perception and emotions: knowing, realizing, remembering, expecting, fearing, hoping; also the participles being and having.

Hoping to be on time, we took a taxi. Надеюсь успеть вовремя, мы взяли такси.

Being tired (= as he was tired) he went home at once.

Having made up my mind long ago, I wouldn't listen to them.

The negative form is used with the particle 'not' placed before Participle I.

Not knowing his new telephone number I could not get in touch with him.

1. Replace the clauses by the appropriate form of Participle I where possible.

Model: As we *hoped to be on time*, we took a taxi. – *Hoping to be on time*, we took a taxi.

1. She moved away *as she felt slightly embarrassed*. 2. As he got a seat rather far back in the upper boxes, he saw almost nothing. 3. As she did not know whether he had seen his brother or not, she did not know how to answer. 4. She stared back, *as she did not know what to do*. 5. Then I walked slowly down the drive away from the house *as I intended to wait by the gate*. 6. I stopped *as I didn't know where to go*. 7. He came nearer to the lying woman *but he feared that she might be dead*. 8. Nick looked at the boy more attentively and smiled *because he remembered* that he had seen him at that yesterday's party.

2. Replace the construction with Participle I by an adverbial clause of reason.

Model: *Hoping to be on time*, we took a taxi. – As we *hoped to be on time*, we took a taxi.

1. Mel stopped, *realizing he was talking to himself*. 2. I came here this afternoon *thinking I might find her*. 3. From there on he travelled by the clock, *timing himself to reach his destination at two o'clock*. 4. *Having been away from it for two days* I'd forgotten how depressing it could be. 5. Philip, *not knowing what on earth this new attitude implied*, went back to his work. 6. She knew that we were lying. *And knowing it*, she was outraged. 7. *Being there*, we could see everything and everybody. 8. She is very conceited, you know, *having so much attention all the time*. 9. *Having decided on this some time ago*, I was unable to give up this idea.

3. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of cause.

1. He kept silence 2. He found the hotel without difficulty 3. She didn't return with us 4. He wasn't listening 5. ... they rang again.

4. Translate using Participle I as adverbial modifier if reason.

1. Сподіваючись встигнути вчасно, ми взяли таксі. 2. Вона знала, що ми обманюємо її, і, знаючи це, вона була у нестямі від люті. 3. Будучи втомленим, він не пішов на дискотеку. 4. Зважившись на це, він не міг сидіти спокійно вдома. 5. Вона повернула назад, не знаючи куди йти. 6. Відчуваючи себе здоровим, він відмовився лягати в лікарню. 7. Ігор, не знаючи, що робити, вирішив не робити нічого. 8. Не знаючи, що відповісти, Пол вирішив промовчати. 9. Маючи намір почекати біля будинку, Сем вийшов першим. 10. У заповіті сказано: "Будучи при здоровому глузді, я витратив усі гроші перед смертю". 11. Усвідомивши, що він не встигне прийти вчасно, Боб зателефонував нам і попередив. 12. Боячись, що його зрозуміють неправильно, якщо він залишиться там один, Нік пішов разом з усіма.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances and manner.

As an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances Participle I denotes some action or event parallel to the action or state denoted by the finite verb. Participle I as an adverbial modifier of manner is akin to an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. The difference lies in the fact that an adverbial modifier of manner characterizes the action of the finite verb, whereas that of attendant circumstances denotes a parallel action or event.

*e.g. He laughed and still **laughing** left the room. (attendant circumstances)*

*He came in **carrying** a big box. (manner)*

1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances (manner). Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He was standing on the top of the mountain admiring the beautiful view. 2. They sat down in the heather for a rest enjoying the view. 3. He peered at her, blinking. 4. He got out of his seat and walked over and stood in front of Janet and Mary, looking down at them. 5. He writes a long letter to his critic, telling him he is very sorry he thought his book was bad. 6. Sitting in the heather the watchers were looking at the sheep on the hill. 7. I sat quite silent, watching her face, a strong and noble face. 8. The door opened and he entered, carrying his head as though it held some fatal secret. 9. "What a nice lunch," said Ann, eating the sugar at the bottom of her coffee cup. 10. I sat on the doorstep holding my little sister in my arms.

2. Use the participles given below as adverbial modifiers of attendant circumstances (manner): *thinking, holding, looking, smoking, reading, speaking, counting, putting, shaking, remembering, fighting.*

1. He has been in three revolutions ... on the barricades. 2. He lay on the sofa 3. She was standing behind the screen door, ... it opens and ... to him from the doorstep. 4. She smiled and closed her eyes ... his words. 5. He sat for a long time 6. He sat in the armchair ... a newspaper. 7. He said good-bye to her ... her hand in a friendly manner. 8. They stood there, mother and son, ... at the stranger. 9. The customs officer stood on deck ... the boxes. 10. He sat down at the table ... his hat on the chair.

3. Paraphrase the sentences using Participle I as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances (manner).

1. She looked out of the window and enjoyed the beautiful scenery. 2. She refused to go with us to the seaside and stayed alone in the room. 3. The tourists stood at the lake and watched its beauty. 4. The student spoke on the topic and showed all the big cities of Great Britain on the map. 5. They stood at the foot of the Cambrian Mountains and greatly enjoyed them. 6. "Villain!" cried he, as he ran down to him. 7. "May I come in?" she said as she pushed the door a little wider open. 8. "I'm late," she remarked, as she sat down and drew off her gloves. 9. The Lake District forms one of the most popular holiday districts in Great Britain and capitalizes the beauty of its lakes and mountains. 10. I lay in bed and read a very interesting detective story.

4. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of manner or attending circumstances.

1. She walked down the hill 2. He went out quickly 3. He laughed embarrassed 4. He stood there 5. He leant on the window-sill 6. She came in 7. They hurried home 8. Nick was silent 9. I turned away 10. I nodded 11. They were sitting at the open window 12. She sleepless the whole night 13. Our friends stood on the shore of the sea 14. She sat at the window ... 15. He went out quickly 16. He laughed embarrassed 17. He leant on the window-sill 18. He stood here 19. They looked at me

5. Translate into English using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances.

1. Дивлячись на себе в дзеркало, вона бачила обличчя своєї мами в молодості. 2. Він вийшов, намагаючись не турбувати свого племінника. 3. Стиснувши губи, вона кивнула на знак згоди. 4. Він стояв нерухомо, спершись на стіл. 5. Він спокійно лежав, думаючи про майбутнє відрядження на Кавказ. 6. Він увійшов до кімнати, несучи каву для Олени. 7. Він мовчав, чекаючи, коли хлопчики підуть із кімнати. 8. Вона сиділа біля вікна і дивилася на хмари. 9. Він стояв непоміченим, спостерігаючи за хлопчиками у дворі. 10. Усі сиділи в напруженому очікуванні й слухали новини по радіо.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of comparison

As an adverbial modifier of comparison only Participle I Non-Perfect Active is used.

As an adverbial modifier of comparison Participle I is always preceded by the conjunctions *as if, as though*.

e.g. He was silent for a while as though pausing for a reply.

1. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of comparison. Make up your own sentences.

1. He flung his arms round his granny's neck as if 2. He looked round as if 3. He raised his head as if 4. He looked at her with entreaty as though 5. He waited for a while as if 6. The boy cried as though 7. She smiled as if 8. Ian left without saying good-bye to anybody, as though 9. The man shrugged as if 10. She grabbed something from the table so hurriedly as though

2. Translate into English using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of comparison.

1. Вона подивилася на Дена з благанням, ніби хотіла щось сказати, але не наважувалася зробити це в присутності своїх батьків. 2. Він зробив крок убік, ніби боявся, що мій дотик забруднить його репутацію. 3. Кіт здригнувся, ніби почув щось, що було недоступне нашому сприйняттю. 4. Том кинувся наздоганяти Марію, немов боячись, що він її більше ніколи не побачить. 5. Ти дивишся на мене так, наче очікуєш, що я ось-ось розтану в повітрі, як дим. 6. Вона розуміла, що це негарно, але вона втупилася в нього так, ніби ніколи раніше не бачила такого красивого чоловіка. 7. Ти так повільно йдеш, ніби я веду тебе не в ресторан, а до зубного лікаря. 8. Що ти стоїш тут у розгубленості, немов не знаєш куди йти? 9. Вона мовчала, ніби чекаючи, що ми заговоримо першими. 10. Вона увійшла в кімнату обережно, немов боялася, що ми прокинемося.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of concession.

With Participle I used as adverbial modifier of concession the conjunction is not obligatory, but the conjunction *though* can be used.

*e.g. He could not catch up with them though **working** very hard.*

1. Complete the following sentences using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of concession. Make up your own sentences.

1. Though ... I could not help smiling. 2. Though ... will be there in time 3. Though ... she tried to look calm. 4. Though ... you'll catch up with the group. 5. Though ... you'll never see us again. 6. You won't achieve much 7. Though ... I didn't understand anything as I didn't know the language they spoke.

2. Translate into English using Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier of concession.

1) Хоча я все розумів, я робив вигляд, що не знаю цієї мови. 2. Хоча ти й старася, ти нічого не досягнеш, якщо слухатимеш його поради. 3. Хоча Пол помирав від нудьги, він прикидався, що йому шалено цікава інформація про те, яка помада пасує до кожної з її суконь. 4. Хоча я знав, що маю рацію, я вирішив промовчати, щоб не спровокувати її на новий спалах гніву. 5. Хоча він не прийшов вчасно, йому вдалося застати нас ще вдома. 6. Хоча ти знаєш мене добре, ти ніколи не здогадаєшся, про що я зараз думаю. 7. Хоча він регулярно купує розумні книжки, він не стає розумнішим - непрочитані книжки ще нікому не допомогли стати освіченішим. 8. Хоча ти знову мене обдурив, нехороший хлопчику, ти отримаєш свою частку торта, але це буде востаннє. 9. Хоча ти пропустив багато занять, ти зумієш наздогнати групу. Принаймні, я сподіваюся на це. 10. Хоча ти почувася добре, тобі доведеться відвідувати лікаря двічі на рік. 11. Хоча вона прекрасно розуміла мене, вона робила вигляд, що не розуміє. 12. Хоча вона не жила в цьому будинку, їй доводилося за нього платити.

Participle I as an adverbial modifier of condition.

Participle I as adverbial modifier of condition is recognized by its syntactical surroundings. It is either the subjunctive mood or the future tense form which allows a participial phrase to function as an adverbial modifier of condition.

Driving at this speed, we'll be there in no time.

1. Translate using Participle I as an adverbial modifier of condition.

1. Якщо ми рухатимемося з такою швидкістю, ми приїдемо на вокзал вчасно. 2. Якщо ти постарася, ти наздоженеш групу. 3. Вона мала бути там, але не пішла, але якби вона була там, вона б не знала, що сказати. 4. Якщо ти будеш багато їсти, ти розтовстієш. 5. Якби я зараз був там, я б їм показав. 6. Якщо він їхатиме так швидко, він потрапить в аварію. 7. Якщо ти будеш приймати ці ліки, ти видужаєш. 8. Якби я знав про контрольну, я б підготувався. 9. Якщо ти спатимеш так довго, у тебе заболить голова. 10. Якщо вона буде багато читати, вона покращить свій словниковий запас. 11. Якби я був на кілька років молодшим, ти б від мене не зумів утекти. 12. Якщо ти одружишся з нею, всі, окрім вас двох, будуть щасливі; може спочатку варто подумати?

Participle I as parenthesis

Participle I as parenthesis forms the headword of a participial phrase, the meaning of which is a comment upon the contents of the whole sentence or sometimes part of it.

Participle I Non-Perfect Active is used in such phrases as *generally speaking, judging by appearance (words), mildly speaking (saying), speaking frankly, strictly speaking, saying nothing of, roughly speaking, putting it mildly, allowing for, taking everything in consideration, etc.*

e.g. *Judging from what you say, he ought to succeed.*

1. Complete the following sentences using Participle I as parenthesis.

1. ... you are the last person I expected to see here. 2. ... we have only his word for it. 3. ..., it is not at all unusual. 4. ..., it was a horrifying thing to happen. 5. ... they enjoyed the scenery. 6. ..., a stay at the seaside is a good idea of a good holiday. 7. ..., I am afraid of bathing. 8. ..., you are hard to please, aren't you?

2. Make up sentences of your own using the following participial phrases.

generally speaking, judging by words, mildly saying, speaking frankly, strictly speaking, saying nothing of, roughly speaking

Revision

1. Point out the participial phrase used as adverbial modifier of comparison, condition and concession.

1. The thick mist gathered in grey curtains and filled the valley. Mr. Ball went carefully down as if being afraid to get lost. 2. She ought to be there and her absence might be resented, but being there she wouldn't know what to say. 3. He said it so as if having various reasons for this refusal. 4. Some- body was waiting: a man, who, though moving irregularly, was making quite a speed in my direction. 5. He studied the map so thoroughly as if trying to remember all the rivers of Great Britain. 6. They stood near the hedge as though enjoying the beauty of its leaves and flowers. 7. Driving at this speed, we'll be there in no time. 8. The tourists looked surprised as if not believing the guide's story. 9. The children kept silent for a while as if hesitating what to say. 10. But why did he marry her, feeling as he did about everything? 11. He studied the way as if trying to show all the large parts of Great Britain. 12. He was greatly excited as if remembering his visit to Stratford-on-Avon. 13. Oh, do go upstairs, Lizzy! You'll only catch a cold, hanging around the passage. 14. She refused to make a trip to the mountains as if not appreciating this kind of holiday. 15. Helen got interested in leaf-bearing trees in the park as though seeing some rare varieties of them.

2. Read and translate the following sentences. Pay attention to the function of Participle 1.

1. At last she left smiling and blowing a kiss from the door. 2. Tom came with me to all the matches returning jubilant, to our customary Saturday luncheon. 3. He drove very fast with one hand as though not caring whether he lived or died. 4. Her aunts sat side by side on the sofa glancing at each other. 5. She stood for a moment fumbling in her bag for her key then the door opened and vanished inside. 6. Alex sat watching her till she was out of sight. 7. I walked down to the beach to bathe, and my uncle, having something to do in the town, walked part of the way with me. 8. Don worked at night, and Rosie, having nothing to do, was glad to go out with one or other of her friends. 9. I sank down on the sofa, suddenly realizing what had happened. 10. A tenant had made inquiries concerning the house, wishing to rent it. 11. He showed enthusiasm when talking about his books. 12. And now, suddenly realizing that his work as Doctor Page's assistant must terminate at the end of the month, he began immediately to look for another position. 13. Coming to the Botanical Gardens one morning in the middle of October, Jordon found his favourite bench occupied. 14. I stood on the highest hill looking into the sky as if searching for some answer. 15. Keeping close together the four of them made their way outdoors and down the porch steps, where they hesitated for a moment, peering into the darkness upon their eyes.

3. Transform the following sentences so as to use Participle I.

Model 1: *When I go somewhere by plane I save a lot of time.* – *(When) going somewhere by plane I save a lot of time.*

Model 2: *When I arrived a little late, I found the party already complete.* – *Having arrived a little late, I found the party already complete.*

Model 3: *As I am often sent on business trips I have seen a lot of the country.* – *Being often sent on business trips I have seen a lot of the country.*

1. When he got to Boston he paid off the taxi and inquired for the next train to Dover. 2. When I went upstairs, I found him asleep, with all his clothes on. 3. «I knew Tom well» he said, as he leaned back in his chair and lit the cigar I had offered him. 4. When his first picture was exhibited they came to Amsterdam to see it, his father and his sister and his mother, and his mother cried, when she looked at it. 5. And while she waited for him to come, her pride began revolting. 6. As Andrew pulled on his coat he reflected miserably that he had not exchanged a word with Christine. 7. After the uncle had once consented to the boy's going out with the Browns, he made no further objection to his association with them. 8. She gave me no answer and looked at me as if she were dreaming about something. 9. As I felt that I was not right I

confessed my fault. 10. After he had waited some minutes for an answer he turned round and left the room. 11. Though Alee had many loyal friends, he also had enemies.

4. Define the type of adverbial modifier expressed by Participle I.

1. She felt as if she could sit there all through the night looking out into the cool, dark street. 2. Having arrived in front of it (the house), she put her hands to her mouth in trumpet form and shouted: « Sally!» 3. Charles, as if sensing that even then I might back off and drive away, came purposefully out of his front door and strode across the grave. 4. He peered at her blinking. 5. He got out of his seat and walked over and stood in front of Janet and Mary, looking down at them. 6. He writes a long letter to his critic, telling him he is very sorry he thought his book was bad. 7. Knowing Terry would raise hell, Quigley nonetheless stayed for most of the party. 8. Bob was looking round as if pointing out the peculiarities of the guests. 9. When listening to her I had the impression that she actually had done what she claimed to do – worked a kind of gigantic miracle. 10. Sam, already regretting his impulse, raised his own hat in response.

5. Complete the following sentences using the expressions in brackets.

1. On the window-sills of the houses stood wooden boxes (to contain, rose plants, and terra-cotta pots). 2. The train (to do, one hundred miles), puffed gently and drew into the station. 3. He drove very fast (to hum, «Downtown»). 4. Poirot (to rise, politely), sat down again and stared up at the ceiling with a puzzled frown. 5. Adele was standing there, (to confront, Steve), her face set. 6. After dinner Adam and Mr. Hopkins went out to the porch, while her aunt sat on the sofa (to turn over, the pages of magazines). 7. He sat back (to enjoy, the sun, and the yellow hills). 8. Several times Lily raised her head as if (to listen), and once she got up and went to the door and stared out for a long time into the night. 9. Like many other new Americans in Paris this spring, I opened the Franco-American Star one morning, and (while to skim, the hackneyed headlines) I came upon something of genuine interest. 10. The host courted their unimportant guest (to invite him, to give his point of view). 11. The door opened and a woman came out, bareheaded (to wear, a mackintosh and, to carry, a string bag). 12. Merle stood (to tap, her pencil on her notebook).

6. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of Participle I.

1. (to reject) by the editorial board, the story was returned to the author for revision. 2. (to reject) by publishers several times, the story was accepted by a weekly magazine. 3. (to wait) for some time in the reception room, he was asked into the office. 4. (to wait) in the reception room, he thought over what he would say when asked into the office. 5. They reached the peak at dusk, (to leave) their camp with the first light. 6. They put up for the night at a temporary camp, (to leave) it at dawn. 7. The friends went out into the city (to leave) their cases at the left luggage department. 8. (to write) and (to leave) a note with the porter, he said he would be back in a half-hour. 9. (to write) in an archaic language, the book was difficult to read. 10. (to write) his first book, he could not go far beyond his own experience. 11. (to be) away so long he was happy to be coming back. 12. (to be) so far away he still felt himself part of his community. 13. The children looked wonderingly at the elephant, never (to see) such a huge animal. 14. Not (to want) to go deeper into the matter, he abruptly changed the conversation.

PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE PARTICIPLE

In Modern English we find the following predicative constructions with the participle:

- (1) the Objective Participial Construction;
- (2) the Subjective Participial Construction;
- (3) the Nominative Absolute Participial Construction;
- (4) the Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction.

THE OBJECTIVE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

The objective participial construction consists of two parts: nominal + verbal (a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and Participle I). The Objective Participial Construction performs the syntactical function of **the complex object**.
e.g. I heard the children whispering.

The Objective Participial Construction with the present participle is used:

after the verbs of sense perception: <i>e.g. We saw (heard, listened to) <u>the train approaching the station.</u></i> <i>Did you smell <u>something burning?</u></i>	<i>to see, to notice, to find, to hear, to observe, to catch, to feel, to perceive, to discover to watch, to smell, to listen to</i>
with various verbs of causative meaning or inducement <i>e.g. I won't have <u>you smoking at your age!</u></i>	<i>to have, to leave, to get, to start, to keep, to set, to stand</i>
after the verbs denoting wish, preference, (dis)like <i>e.g. I don't want <u>you talking back to me.</u></i>	<i>to want, to like, to need, (would) like, to like (would) love, (would) prefer, (would) hate</i>

1. Read the following sentences and underline the complex object with Participle I. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I heard mum saying something about it. 2. I thought I saw something moving along the track. 3. He found her watering some plants, her face expressed her surprise at his unusual presence. 4. I opened the door with extreme reluctance and found Morton standing outside. 5. They could hear the Invisible Man breathing. 6. She ran up the drive and I heard her fumbling for the key. 7. I heard the guards moving behind us. 8. I saw him walking briskly through the crowd. 9. It set him thinking. 10. Adeline found her husband standing in the middle of the room waiting for her. 12. I caught her looking at me. 12. They watched him hurrying down the path toward the other men.

2. Read and translate the following sentences. Speak on the verbs after which complex objects with Participle I are used.

1. He noticed a girl standing listlessly by a pillar and he slowed his pace. 2. Then she heard the stranger laughing quietly, and his footsteps came across the room. 3. But he found his traps waiting for him in the porter's lodge. 4. At his home, he let himself in, and to his surprise, found his wife coming towards him in the hall. 5. The four soldiers noticed Christian watching them. 6. Mike saw him standing in the doorway. 7. From where she stood she could hear everything going on at once. 8. She found herself waking from sleep and crying, but what she was weeping for she had no idea at all. 9. Their ears spread wide to hear the first noise that would send them rushing into the bush. 10. She could hear Bart moving about outside, whistling as he worked. 11. We may suppose him representing the England of Napoleon's wars, and general unrest. 12. Well, I don't want you coming here and telling me I am untidy. 13. In her ears there rang of a sudden the outrageous and unaccountable laughter that had sent Miss Warren flying from the room.

3. Transform the following sentences into complex objects with Participle I.

Model 1: *I could see that Mary was still reading the book. – I could see Mary reading the book.*

1. As Nick came up to Toby he turned and saw that Michael was watching them from the other side. 2. He found that the old man was still sitting grim in the darkness. 3. He could see that a man was standing on the pavement. 4. When he opened the window he heard how the birds were singing. 5. In a minute or two I noticed that her eyes were stealthily peeping at me over the top of the book. 6. I could feel that the room was rocking under my feet. 7. I noticed that now his eyes were resting on me with a faint smile of amusement.

Model 2: *A small book was lying open on the bed. (to see) – She saw a small book lying open on the bed.*

1. He was watching her so intently. (to see) 2. Martha was protesting that of course they must all come to her flat. (to find) 3. My sister was signaling to me from another table. (to see) 4. The corner of a three-penny detective novel was protruding from Albert's pocket. (to note) 5. The rain drops were pattering against the leaves. (to hear) 6. His father was moving around in the living room. (to hear) 7. He was hurrying through the hot June forenoon, up the hill and on to the open downland. (to imagine) 8. He was standing there, his face expectant. (to see)

4. a) Use the participles given below as parts of complex objects: going, dozing, passing, turning, wondering, moving, opening, waiting, setting, looking.

1. He could feel himself ... red. 2. Please start the clock 3. He turned and saw a pair of large dark eyes ... at him through the window of the cab. 3. "I just happened to be in the neighbourhood," she said, "and found myself ... by." 4. As they danced they watched Crisp and Mary's mother ... about the room. 6. He glanced up to see the door 7. I found him ... under a tree. 8. They left me ... outside. 9. The news left me ... what would happen next. 10. They turned to see the sun

b) Complete the sentences using Participle I as part of a complex object.

1. Did anyone see you (to enter) the house? 2. I last saw him (to go towards) the riverbank. 3. Where's my umbrella? I thought I left it (to hang) with my coat. 4. Did you hear voices (to call) for help. 5. When Mary opened her eyes she saw Nina (to stand) by her side. 6. We could feel the sun (to beat) on our necks. 7. We all sensed danger (to approach). 8. Can you feel something (to burn)? 9. I noticed Tom Wells (to stand) in the shadow of the fountain. 10. She liked to see him (to do things, to dig, to plant). 11. Did you see Mary (to look) into a shop window? 12. He found them (to sit) together and (to talk) peacefully. 13. She felt her voice (to tremble) and tried to control herself. 14. She watched him (to pass) the gate and (to walk) down the street. 15. I saw him (to put) his case right here.

5. Translate into English using complex objects with Participle I.

1. Я бачив, як вони відчиняли двері. 2. Том побачив, як у воді щось швидко рухається. 3. Дійшовши до середини, я відчув, що міст рухається. 4. Я спостерігала за тим, як уважно він читає листа. 5. Я бачити не можу, коли погано поведуться з тваринами. 6. Ти не бачив, як вони грали в теніс? 7. Я чув, як Джек запрошував їх на пікнік. 8. Ми чули, як водій вибачався перед пасажирами. 9. Я помітив, як вона входила в магазин. 10. Він відчував, що хтось спостерігає за ним. 11. вона відчинила вікно і спостерігала, як її діти гралися в саду. 12. Стіни нашого будинку тонкі, і я чую, як сусідка грає на піаніно. 13. він знайшов її на платформі в очікуванні поїзда. 14. Коли Том побачив, як Джек переходив вулицю, він помахав йому рукою. 15. Я бачила, як ви проїхали повз наш будинок у своїй машині. 16. Він відчував, як у нього тремтіли руки. 17. Ми чули, як вона спускалася сходами. 18. Вчителька спостерігала, як діти входили до школи. 19. вони запитали, чи не помітив я, щоб хто-небудь виходив із дому. 20. Ми спостерігали, як діти грали у футбол. 21. Вона знайшла Фокса, який розмовляв у саду. 22. Я відчуваю, що на кухні щось горить. 23. Я спостерігала за тим, як мій син виконує домашнє завдання. 24. його дружина була в душі. він чув, як тече вода. 25. Я застав Кет, коли вона снідала, перед тим як йти зустрічати Аню.

THE SUBJECTIVE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

The subjective participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case and Participle I.

The construction is mainly used with the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, to catch*) and some causative verbs (*to keep, to leave*) in the passive voice.

*e.g. Jane was heard playing the piano.
Two women were heard quarrelling.
The boy was found smoking in the kitchen.
I was kept waiting for an hour.
The man was left standing on the spot.*

1. Read the following sentences and underline complex subject with Participle I. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. They were heard talking together. 2. At times he was seen driving with her by people who knew him in a social and commercial way. 3. The boots of Albert could be heard racing upstairs. 4. Martha was seen staring at the tree. 5. In a few moments during the launching of the boats, Danvers was seen speaking to a young American girl. 6. He could often be seen walking with his eyes fixed anxiously on little sailing-boat. 7. Here the nurse's voice was heard calling from the top landing. 8. Many students with blood streaming down their faces were seen running down the side streets to avoid arrest. 9. The boys were caught stealing cherries. 10. When I rang the bell a dog could be heard barking in the hall. 11. When the car was heard approaching the people fled anywhere to avoid the police.

3. Transform the following sentences into sentences with complex subjects.

Model 1: *They heard two people talking about her. – Two people were heard talking about her.*

1. They saw her sitting poring over her book. 2. We heard the baby crying in her pram. 3. We saw him exchanging glances with that man. 4. They could see a white house gleaming through the reddening autumn leaves. 5. From the distance they could see the host waiting for them on the doorsteps. 6. The teacher found him standing in the middle of the class- room.

Model 2: *He stole curious glances at Mary. (to see) – He was seen stealing curious glances at Mary.*

1. Paul consulted his silver watch. (to see) 2. He asked if I was in. (to hear) 3. He telephoned the doctor, stressing the gravity and urgency of the case. (to hear) 4. He paced up and down in his room long after the rest of the family had gone to bed. (to hear) 5. She went in that direction about a quarter of an hour ago. (to see) 6. They argued on the terrace a few minutes ago. (to hear)

THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

The nominative absolute participial construction

The nominative absolute participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case and Participle I. The nominal element and Participle I are in a predicative relation; the noun or pronoun is not the subject of the sentence.

The construction is used as an adverbial modifier:

- 1) *of attendant circumstances.* e.g. He ran into the room, his eyes shining.
- 2) *of cause.* e.g. It being now pretty late, we hired a taxi and went home.
- 3) *of time.* e.g. This having been settled, Bart left them.
- 4) *of condition.* In this function the construction occurs but seldom and is almost exclusively used with the participles *permitting* and *failing*. e.g. Weather permitting, we shall start tomorrow.

THE PREPOSITIONAL ABSOLUTE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

The prepositional absolute participial construction with Participle I

A prepositional absolute participial construction is introduced by the preposition *with*. Its nominal element is usually a noun in the common case, or a pronoun in the objective case. The construction usually functions as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

e.g. She stood up with tears running down her face.

Note: A Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction differs from a Non-Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction in that it is introduced by the preposition **with**. The main syntactical function

of the construction is an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

Then she sprang away and ran around the desks and benches, with Tom running after her.

1. Translate into Ukrainian paying attention to the Nominative Absolute Participial Constructions.

1. **This being understood**; the conference was over 2. **The constraint caused by the old man's presence having worn off a little**, the conversation became more lively. 3. **This having been done, and Sikes having satisfied his appetite**, the two men lay down on chairs for a short nap. 4. **The concert being over**, the lottery came next. 5. **Dinner being over**, the old lady asked Barbara to come and sit on the sofa near her. 6. Then, **the house search proving** that she was not there, Asa went outside to look up and down the street. 7. **All the necessary preparations having been made with utmost secrecy**, the army launched an attack. 8. **The treaty having been signed**, trade was at once resumed. 9. About eleven o'clock, **the snow having thawed, and the day being finer and a little warmer than the previous one**, he went out again. 10. **Dinner being over**, we assembled in the drawing-room. 11. **The fifth of June arriving**, they departed. 12. **His directions to the porter being finished**, he came up to his niece. 13. **The cathode being heated**, the electrons leave the surface and move to the anode. 14. **Electrons moving through a wire**, electrical energy is generated.

2. Read and translate the following sentences. State the function of the Nominative Absolute Participial Constructions.

1. He found that Anne had advanced into the hall her hands being folded upon her apron, her eyes contemplating him. 2. She counted out the money from her bulging purse, her fingers trembling, her eyes snapping at him. 3. As she approached the end of the bundle (of notes) she went slower and slower, her sly black eyes twinkling. 4. Mrs. Barnwell's evening began at nine o'clock, the late hour being chosen out of consideration for the medical gentlemen who might be detained at their surgeries. 5. They walked silently through the street, Tom being very grave, Liza weeping bitterly. 6. The Strand, it being the hour when the theatres began to empty themselves, was a roaring torrent of humanity and vehicles. 7. Very soon they lost sight of the other machines, each having taken its own course. 8. He glared at Tom with outrage, his eyes glittering with excitement. 9. The waltz in the back room being finished, three couples heading for the bar, caught Daylight's eyes.

3. Transform the following sentences so as to use the nominative absolute participial construction.

1. Danny lit a cigarette and his fingers shook so violently he could barely hold the match. 2. As the front door was open, she could see straight through the house. 3. As the complications had ensued, recovery was impossible. 4. As the situation was urgent, we had to go ahead. 5. She said it in a low voice and a spasm of pain crossed her face. 6. When the message was finished Evie brought Julia a cup of tea. 7. We set off; the rain was still coming down heavily. 8. As it was raining cats and dogs, we stayed at home. 9. After she had gone, he got to thinking the matter over. 10. Thoughtful, Andrew finished his omelette; his eyes were all the time fixed upon the microscope. 11. The question was rather difficult to answer at once, and I asked for permission to think it over. 12. He stood leaning against the wall, his arms were folded. 13. There was very little time left; we had to hurry. 14. Of an evening he read aloud; his small son sat by his side. 15. The new engines were safely delivered, all of them were in good order. 16. Bill could not sleep the whole night, as there was something wrong with his eye. 17. As the underground station was not far, we walked there. 18. If time permits, we shall come a few days earlier. 19. If mother permits us, we shall go to the theatre. 20. When the working day was over, she went straight home. 21. As a storm was arising, the ship entered the harbour. 22. As the stop was a long one,

the girls got off the train. 23. As the weather was perfect, Lydia played tennis every day. 24. As the last month was a very busy one, she could not answer her friend's letter.

PARTICIPLE II

Participle II is a non-finite form of the verb which has verbal and adjectival properties. Participle II of transitive verbs is passive in meaning (broken – розбитий, closed – зачинений), participle II of intransitive verbs is active (risen – піднявшийся, gone – тей, що пішов). The adjectival character of Participle II manifests itself in its syntactical functions. In the sentence Participle II can function as an attribute (a) and a predicative (b).

e.g. (a) An island is a piece of land surrounded by water.
(b) I was disappointed with the book.

When Participle II is used as a predicative, it may be preceded, like an adjective, by adverbs of degree, such as *very, too, extremely, greatly, slightly, so, much, more* as in:

e.g. She was too excited to mind it.

The verbal character of Participle II can be seen in its combinability. It means that participle II of transitive verbs combines with a by-object denoting the doer of the action.

e.g. The results obtained by the research group are promising. Participles II of prepositional transitive verbs are followed by the appropriate prepositions: *the article referred to*.

Participle II may be modified by an adverbial modifier: *a mansion built twenty years before*.

1. Read and translate the following sentences.

1. This speech was received with great applause, mixed with the cries of: "That's the talk!" 2. Mr. Brown, startled, dropped his hat. 3. Rosie looked round with delight at the great dark smoky house, crowded to the ceiling with the inhabitants of South London. 4. Carried away by the melody, Marie went so far as to dance a step or two herself. 5. "Let's skate again," she said, "shall we? With crossed hands." 6. He seemed calmed and at peace. 7. I took her hands in mine: she held my sprained wrist gently. 8. These two people seem extraordinary interested in Mon Repos. 9. She seemed pleased at Jane's graciousness and complimentary sayings. 10. Surrounded by difficulties and uncertainty, he longed for Christine. 11. Sam looked up relieved. Dear Old Bates was standing in the lighted doorway. 12. I had been seated at the desk a long time, lost in thought. 13. They had gazed sadly on the pitted surface of the once smooth lawn. 14. Strickland was distinguished from most English- men by his perfect indifference to comfort. 15. Informed of the arrival of the ship, they sent a car to the port. 16. She showed the travelers into the room reserved for them. 17. The figures mentioned in his article were published in "The Times". 18. He didn't usually utter a word unless spoken to. 19. Jenkinson was a retired colonel who lived in Dorset and whose chief occupation was gardening.

2. Open the brackets and use the correct form of Participle II.

1. She looked at the table. There was a loaf of brown bread (divide) into two halves. 2. There was another pause (break) by a fit of laughing of one of the old men sitting in the first row. 3. The child (leave) alone in the large room began screaming. 4. The centre of the cotton industry is Manchester (connect) with Liverpool by a canal. 5. The story (tell) by the old captain made the young girl cry. 6. He did not doubt that the information (receive) by morning mail was of great interest for his competitors. 7. The equipment (install) in the shop is rather sophisticated. 8. We've got a great variety of products, which are in great demand. Here are some samples (send) to our distributors last month. 9. The methods (apply) in the building of the new metro stations proved to be efficient. 10. She warmed over the dinner (cook) yesterday. 11. Clothes (buy) in the sale can't be changed. 12. We employ (experience) personnel. We do not care what sex they are. 13. We walked down the hall and down the wide thickly (carpet) stairs. 14. A man in (tear) clothes was making his way towards the boat. 15. (Pollute) water is not safe for

drinking. 16. Because we have a (write) agreement, our landlord won't be able to raise our rent for two years. 17. The (expect) event did not occur.

18. The (steal) car was found in the forest. 19. The men ran out of the house, like schoolboys (frighten) of being late. 20. I don't have any furniture of my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish) apartment?

The functions of Participle II in the sentence.

1. Participle II as an **attribute**.

*e.g. the problem **discussed at the meeting***

Participle II, as well as Participle I, can be used in pre-position (without any accompanying words) and in post-position (with one or more accompanying words).

An attribute expressed by Participle II may be detached; in this case it often has an additional meaning of an adverbial, modifier:

*e.g. **Crushed at first by his imprisonment**, he had soon found a dull relief in it. (Dickens)*

2. Participle II as an **adverbial modifier**.

In this function Participle II is preceded by the conjunctions *when, while, if, as if, as though, though*, etc.

Participle II can be an adverbial modifier: of time, of reason, of condition, of comparison, of concession

3. Participle II as a **predicative**.

*e.g. I was **impressed by his words**.*

4. Participle II as **part of a complex object**.

Participle II can be used as an attribute.

a) As a **premodifier** it stands alone: *Look at that **broken** cup.*

or forms a very short participial phrase containing an adverb: *There was a **neatly packed** bundle on the table.*

b) As a postmodifier Participle II may stay alone: *Things **seen** are mightier than things **heard**.*

or it may be accompanied by a preposition: *The book **referred to** is not available now.*

by an agentive by-object: *Look at the cup **broken by you**.*

an adverb and prepositional phrases as adverbial modifiers: *The baby **carefully put into the basket** was sleeping peacefully in the shade.*

c) Sometimes Participle II is detached and its position is not fixed. Detached attributes are separated from the noun by a comma in writing and by a pause in speech.

***Terribly tired**, two women went home.*

1. Read and translate the sentences.

1. The clipped, dark green hedges of the garden were covered with a light frosting of snow. 2. There was a collection of blue and white porcelain effectively arranged on an oak console table. 3. The figure outlined against the sky seemed unable to move. 4. The frightened mouse darted off into a hole. 5. The socks lost in the dryer were her favourites. 6. «Money shared makes love grow stronger, money given kills it dead, » Celeste held it firm. 7. First of all she went to the bombed building. 8. Our minds should meet in a serious mutually needed search for common understanding. 9. It was a neatly written letter. 10. The room had even a faint perfume about it which gave it a lived-in air. 11. The dictionary referred to can be found in our library. 12. These are cities inhabited by their creators. 13. People hurried by, hidden under their umbrellas. 14. The women dimly seen in the shadow are talking softly. 15 Johnson, left in charge of both officers, marched about for a little while. 16. The wounded people were transported in a jam-packed lorry. 17. The house built in this street is very beautiful. 18. The issue discussed at the last meeting is of great importance for our company. 19. They have to repair the broken parts of this engine. 20. The data found by the researchers is valuable for their future work. 21. The

composition written by this student is excellent. 22. We shall use instruments of improved design. 23. The method proposed by this young researcher was not acceptable. 24. The results obtained by this group are very good. 25. There are many illustrated magazines in our reading-room. 26. The discovery made by him is of great value. 27. Our manager presented the approved plan to the audience. 28. The book just referred to has been translated into Russian. 29. Lake Baikal, known to be the deepest in the world, is fed by 336 rivers. 30. The decision taken by him is important for our business operation. 31. There are many hidden rocks in the stream. 32. This firm is interested in the purchase of automobiles produced by our plant. 33. The terms agreed upon were included in the contract.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an attribute. Make up your own sentences.

1. Here is the letter 2. Where is the article ...? 3. Everyone approved of the report 4. This is the house 5. They reached the village 6. We looked at the picture 7. I bought a book 8. Where is the newspaper ...? 9. She found a manuscript 10. I saw something 11. He has not found the money

3. Change the sentences so as to use Participle II.

1. The events and the characters which are described in this book are purely fictional. 2. The house, which was built two hundred years ago, stood in a long green valley. 3. He applied for a job. It was advertised in the paper. 5. The millionaire bought a picture. It was painted by Picasso. 11. The church was built in the fifteenth century. It's in need of repair. 12. The old painting was found in a dustbin. It turned out to be worth a fortune. 13. You borrowed the books from the library. They're now overdue. 16. His words had the effect which he desired.

4. Open the brackets using the correct form of the Participle.

1. A crowd of (excite) people were watching the firemen trying to save the (burn) building. 2. «During my vacation I came across several extremely (interest) books, » said he. «Which ones? » she asked in an (interest) voice. 3. Why do you look so (worry)? – I've had a number of (worry) telephone calls lately. 4. I don't know what was in the (burn) letter, I didn't read it. 5. Nothing can save the (sink) ship now, all we can do is to try and save the passengers. 6. It was an (excite) incident. No wonder she spoke about it in an (excite) voice. 7. After hearing the (frighten) tale, the (frighten) children wouldn't go to sleep. 8. The doctor did his best to convince her that there was nothing seriously wrong with the boy, but the (worry) mother wouldn't calm down.

5. Use Participle I or Participle II as an attribute in the following sentences:

1. The (breaking / broken) dishes lay on the floor. 2. The (trembling / trembled) children were given a blanket for warmth. 3. Compassionate friends tried to console the (crying / cried) victims of the accident. 4. When James noticed the (burning / burnt) building, he notified the fire department immediately. 5. The (exciting / excited) passengers jumped into the lifeboats when notified that the ship was sinking. 6. The (smiling / smiled) *Mona Lisa* is on display in the Louvre in Paris. 7. The wind made such (frightening / frightened) noises that the children ran to their parents' room. 8. The (frightening / frightened) hostages only wanted to be left alone. 9. The (boring / bored) lecture got the students to sleep. 10. The (boring / bored) students went to sleep during the (boring / bored) lecture. 11. The police towed away the (parking / parked) cars because they were blocking the entrance. 12. (Freezing / frozen) food is often easier to prepare than fresh food. 13. The (cleaning / cleaned) shoes were placed in the sun to dry. 14. We found it difficult to get through the (closing / closed) door without a key. 15. As we entered the (crowding / crowded) room, I noticed my cousins.

6. Use Participle I, Participle II or the Infinitive as an attribute in the following sentences:

1. She looked at a ... photograph of Jimmy. (to frame)
2. John busied himself with the complex problems of a ... city. (to grow)
3. There were infrequent visitors and her books ... her occupied. (to keep)
4. In the room there were four men ... over their coffee. (to chat)
5. In the theatre there was always a seat ... for him. (to reserve)
6. Late at night he received a telegram from his father ... him to come home at once. (to ask)
7. The Cotton Cooperative ... by his father to protect the cotton growers in the area, was expanded to include tobacco. (to found)
8. In the drawer he kept the envelopes ... his children's letters. (to contain)
9. He decided not to plant the fields because of the labour shortage ... by the war. (to create)
10. He outlined his plan ... the votes of the two men. (to obtain)
11. He accepted the invitation ... the matter. (to discuss)
12. I found myself in the ... room. (to darken)
13. People usually accept the emotions ... to the concept of home. (to attach)
14. The meeting of the Council ... by Jim Corbin two days later was a particularly stormy one. (to call)
15. He received permission ... up the unkempt grassy lawn. (to clean)
16. She wondered every day at that folly, already ... into the past. (to recede)
17. They were reluctant to fill out the small forms ... the expenses they had made. (to describe)
18. I helped him in handling problems ... by other departments. (to create)
19. I made one ... remark after another in an effort ... friendly. (to joke, to be)
20. I know I won't be able to think of a single intelligent thing ... in reply. (to say)
21. I smiled with relief when I saw it was my brother ... on the grass. (to lie)
22. In the telephone I heard the ... announcement of the time. (to record)
23. Every two weeks we are paid with machine-processed checks ... out of stiff paper. (to manufacture)
24. He left a note ... he was sorry. (to say)
25. He made a few ... jokes. (to tease)
26. He was afraid that his company might lose the order to the ... company. (to compete)
27. I'm making no plans ... my present job. (to leave)
28. I worked long on the program ... to me and prepared a very good and witty demonstration of eighteen colour slides. (to allot)
29. His ambition ... a speech was nothing more than a shallow, middle-class vanity. (to make)
30. She poured some ... water into the coffee pot. (to boil)
31. I found myself outside with an ... head. (to ache)
32. With some show of reluctance, I made Adam the ... promise. (to require)

Participle II as the predicative (part of compound nominal predicate)

In this function Participle II denotes a state.

*This road is **finished**; the great idea is **realized**.*

*He felt **disappointed**.*

*She looked **worried**.*

Occasionally we come across a Participle II with an active meaning used predicatively.

*Everybody is **gone**.*

The compound nominal predicate consists of a link verb (be, look, get, grow, seem, turn, remain, etc.) and a predicative, expressed by Participle II.

*I didn't understand his words. I was **confused**.*

1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Underline Participle II.

1. Where are you? I am totally lost without you.
2. He was tired of sitting, and he felt cramped after the drive from Paris.
3. «Gone with the Wind» is a fascinating and unforgettable book.
4. She arrived at her father-in-law's office unannounced. He looked startled and put out by her unexpected visit, but being a gentleman of the old school, he invited her into his inner office.
5. Evening is come.
6. He looks perplexed and troubled.
7. The door remained locked.
8. Martin felt thoroughly disappointed.
9. The sun is not risen.
10. You seem greatly surprised.
11. This book is sold everywhere.
12. This pencil is broken. Can I have another one?
13. He cast upon her one more look, and was gone.
14. He seemed calmed and at peace.
15. These two people seem extraordinary interested in this case.
16. She seemed pleased at Jane's graciousness and complimentary sayings.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of a predicative. Make up your own sentences.

1. «I felt utterly » 2. He looked very 3. He was angry because his plan was not 4. Why should you look ...? 5. The children were 6. The window remained 7. You seem 8. Everybody is 9. She felt 10. You look quite

3. Translate into English using Participle II as predicative.

1. Двері здавалися зачиненими. 2. Вікно залишилося відкритим. 3. Ти здаєшся розчарованим. 4. Вона виглядає смертельно переляканою. 5. Наші клієнти виглядають зацікавленими в новому проєкті. 6. Він залишився неперекоганим у нашій правоті. 7. Справу зроблено! Готуйте ваші гроші! 8. Щось сталося? Ти виглядаєш схвильованим. 9. Місяць ще не сховався. 10. Тільки одна печера залишилася необстеженою. 11. На жаль! І цей олівець зламаний! 12. Усе скінчено! Він пішов. 13. Ви здаєтеся здивованими. 14. Кіт виглядав задоволеним - миша з'їдена, можна йти спати. 15. Усі були вражені його новим іміджем.

Participle II as an adverbial modifier of time

Participle II may serve as an adverbial modifier of **time** usually with the conjunction **when** or **until**:

When asked he always helped me.

1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He is very affable when spoken to, but naturally silent. 2. He won't stop arguing until interrupted. 3. When asked, he answered all the questions. 4. Unless discussed, the new method must not be used. 5. When translated, the instruction became perfectly understood. 6. When offered help, he accepted it with gratitude. 7. Ice melts when heated. 8. When corrected, the article was published. 9. When produced, the parts will be sent to various plants. 10. When cooled, the solution was tested. 11. When subjected to high temperature, this substance changes its properties. 12. When installed, the device will be ready for operation. 13. When asked whether she would participate in the conference she answered that she would. 14. When asked, he couldn't answer the question. 15. When checked by the teacher, the compositions were handed out to the students. 16. When completed, the project was discussed in detail. 17. When freshly prepared this substance is colourless. 18. When asked whether he would return soon he answered that he would be away for several months.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an adverbial modifier of time. Make up your own sentences.

1. He was always angry when 2. The children won't stop quarrelling until 3 He will go on reading the book until 4. He was always polite when 5. His work was discussed in details when 6. The dictations were handed out to the pupils when 7. Water boils when 8. The book will be published when 9. He won't do this until 10. Any mistake will be corrected when

Participle II as an adverbial modifier of cause (reason)

Occupied by his thoughts he didn't hear my question.

Exercise 1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Raised in Wyoming, David sometimes writes songs about sad cowboys. 2. Lost in the world of imagination, I forgot my sad, lonely existence for a while. 3. Shocked into silence, they kept their gaze fixed on the odd creature. 4. Left behind at the office, Dolores wept over the scattered papers. 5. Deprived of his wife and son, Tom found the solitude at Rocking Hut intolerable.

6. Packed in cases, the goods were not damaged. 7. Completed in due time, the book was accepted by the publishing house. 8. Squeezed by the ice, the steamer could not continue her way. 9. Based on a real life event, the story aroused everybody's attention. 10. Stirred by the beauty of the twilight, he strolled away from the hotel. 11. Mr. Wren startled, dropped his hat. 12. Carried away by the melody, Marie went so far as to dance a step or two herself. 13. Surrounded by difficulties and uncertainly, he longed for Christine. 14. I had been seated at the desk a long time, lost in thought. 15. Occupied by these strange ideas, he stopped moving.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an adverbial modifier of cause. Make up your own sentences.

1. He took leave of them 2. He couldn't say a word 3. ... he opened his eyes wide. 4. She dropped her eyes 5. He longed for the holidays 6. ..., he walked slowly along the alley. 7. He felt miserable 8. ..., she started singing. 9. ..., his story dragged my attention. 10. ..., the man could hardly move.

3. Translate into English using Participle II as an adverbial modifier of cause.

1. Занурений у свої думки, Фред не помічав, куди він іде. 2. Здивований її поведінкою, Нік вирішив промовчати. 3. Залишена вдома сама, дитина не могла не заплакати. 4. Заснований на реальних подіях, фільм вразив усіх глядачів. 5. Віднесений відпливом, човен зник з поля зору. 6. Шоковані, вони не знали, що сказати у відповідь на таке хамство. 7. Оточений ворогами, Нік вважав за краще не висловлювати свою думку. 8. Розкритикована начальником, молода співробітниця розплакалася. 9. Вражений красою дівчини, Борис надовго застиг перед фотографією. 10. Помітивши нас там, він дуже здивувався. 11. Зраджений найкращим другом, Нік не знав, що йому тепер робити, у кого просити допомоги.

Participle II as an adverbial modifier of condition

In this function Participle II is mostly used with the conjunction *if* or *unless*.

If asked he always helped me.

1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I shall certainly give evidence on your behalf, if required. 2. John will speak for hours, unless interrupted. 3. If frozen, water becomes ice. 4. If corrected, the article will be published. 5. If asked, he will tell them all about it. 6. Unless otherwise stated we shall analyse only solutions in liquids. 7. Unless heated this substance does not melt. 8. If left to myself, I should infallibly have let this chance slip. 9. If directed, I took the lead, almost happily. 10. If seen from this angle, the picture looks rather good. 11. If read aloud, the poem could be very effective.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an adverbial modifier of condition. Make up your own sentences.

1. He will tell you everything if 2. He will read late into night if 3. He will speak for hours on end if 4. I'll go there unless 5. This poem will sound better if 6. The snow won't melt unless 7. The book will be published if 8. He won't start to do this work unless 9. I shall stand for you if 10. We'll always help if

3. Translate into English using Participle II as an adverbial modifier of condition.

1. Він розповідатиме анекдоти годинами, поки його не зупинять. 2. Я міг би зробити це, якщо мене попросять. 3. Вода закипить, якщо її нагріти. 4. Я буду лаятися, якщо мене розбудять занадто рано. 5. Я нікуди не поїду, поки мені не заплатять. 6. Він розповість про це всім, якщо його не зупинити. 7. Якщо йогурт заморозити, його можна їсти як морозиво. 8. Якщо це питання вирішене, його можна викреслити. 9. Якщо машину

полагодити, її можна продати за хороші гроші. 10. Я тебе підтримаю, якщо буде потрібно.

Participle II as an adverbial modifier of concession

Participle II is used with the conjunction though or although:

Though occupied by his thoughts, he willingly answered my question.

1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Though asked in disarming sociability, Mary's question was loaded. 2. Though expected on Sunday, he arrived on Monday. 3. Though boiled, the water was unsuitable for drinking. 4. Though expected on Saturday she didn't arrive at all. 5. Miss Broderick, though not personally well known in the county, had been spoken well of by all men. 6. Although cooked for several hours, the meat was still tough. 7. Though grown without chemicals, the vegetables which are sold in this shop are tasteless. 8. Though heated this substance does not melt. 9. Though corrected, the article hasn't been published. 10. Though left to myself, I couldn't fall asleep at all.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an adverbial modifier of concession. Make up your own sentences.

1. Though ... he tried to answer the question. 2. They went on running, though 3. They continued their journey, though 4. I won't do this, though 5. Though ... for fifteen minutes, the potatoes were still raw. 6. Though ..., he continued hiding behind the bush. 7. Though ... alone, the child didn't cry. 8. Don didn't go there, though

3. Translate into English using Participle II as an adverbial modifier of concession.

1. Хоча мене туди запросили, я не збираюся йти. 2. Хоча він дуже втомився, він продовжував збирати яблука в саду. 3. Хоча його всі забули, він не почувався самотнім. 4. Хоча сукню купили кілька років тому, вона ще не вийшла з моди. 5. Хоча його попросили про це його батьки, він не виконав прохання. 6. Хоча його зраджували кілька разів, він усе одно ще вірить людям. 7. Ця машина не надійна, хоча її й полагодили. 8. Хоча йому наказали зробити це, він не виконав наказ. 9. Хоча її давно помітили, дівчинка не злазила з дерева. 10. Хоча його навчали музики п'ять років, він не міг зіграти й найпростішої мелодії.

Participle II as an adverbial modifier of comparison

Participle II is used with the conjunction as if or as though:

He looked at me, as if bewildered by my question.

1. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. The girl sat silently as if transported into another world. 2. "I get off the train," he repeated as if hypnotized. 3. For a moment the trio stood as if turned to stone. 4. He looked at her for a moment as though amazed at her friendliness. 5. As if frozen, he stood there for some minutes. 6. As if directed, I started moving that direction. 7. As if pinched, the girl screamed. 8. Paul sank in the arm-chair, as if deadly tired.

2. Complete the following sentences using Participle II in the function of an adverbial modifier of comparison. Make up your own sentences.

1. He looked up as if 2. He stood without moving as if 3. He kept silent as if 4. She stared at me as if 5. He listened attentively, as if 6. The girl sobbed as if 7. He looked at me as if

3. Translate into English using Participle II as an adverbial modifier of comparison.

1. Вона подивилася на нього, немов він її вдарив. 2. Він дивився на картину, немов загіпнотизований. 3. Чоловік здригнувся, немов його штовхнули. 4. Хлопчик повернувся, немов його окликнули. 5. Мартін упав на ліжку, немов страшенно втомився. 6. Дитина заснула так швидко, немов її вимкнули. 7. Дівчинка заплакала, немов її образили. 8. У Фреда був такий вираз обличчя, немов він був дуже здивований моїми словами. 9. Він відсахнувся вбік, немов злякався. 10. Немов уражений блискавкою, він здригнувся, він, нарешті, зрозумів усе!

4. Change the sentences so as to use Participle II.

Model: I've just bought two books. They are written by Hailey. – I've just bought two books **written** by Hailey.

1. The bride walked down the aisle. She was accompanied by her father. 2. They were driven from the country by persecution. They had to emigrate. 3. He was disowned by his parents. He was forced to stand on his own feet. 4. They were disappointed with the meal. They complained to the manager. 5. The tourist was arrested for shoplifting. She had to pay a fine. 6. The suspect was arrested by the police. He turned out to be the wrong man. 7. Napoleon was born in 1769. He was Emperor of France. 8. The girl went to the party. Her boyfriend accompanied her.

5. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Отримана вчора звістка схвилювала всіх. 2. Побудований на вершині пагорба будинок було видно здалеку. 3. Переслідуваний собаками олень сховався в хащі. 4. Дорогою на аеродром проїхало кілька автомашин у супроводі мотоциклістів. 5. Нещодавно випущено каталог картин цього художника, що зберігаються в національних музеях. 6. Колекція рукописів у цьому університеті, що збиралася протягом багатьох десятків років, є однією з найбагатших у світі. 7. Отримавши дозвіл зробити копію знаменитої картини, молодий художник із захопленням взявся за справу. 8. Хоча книга була присвячена вузькій темі, вона становила інтерес не тільки для фахівців. 9. Деякі питання, які порушуються в доповіді, заслуговують на серйозну увагу. 10. Оскільки стаття була написана важкою мовою, її нелегко було перекласти. 11. Якщо це оповідання адаптувати, його можна дати студентам першого курсу для домашнього читання. 12. Коли правило пояснили ще раз, воно здалося зовсім легким. 13. Цифри, на які посилається стаття, взято зі звіту комісії. 14. Завод приступив до випуску вантажних автомашин, які, як кажуть, дуже економічні. 15. Угоду, яку, як повідомлялося, було підписано минулого місяця, ратифіковано обома сторонами.

THE OBJECTIVE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH PARTICIPLE II

The objective participial construction with Participle II functions as a complex object. The construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and Participle II. The elements of the construction are in a predicative relationship.

e.g. I would like it done right away. I must have my hair cut.

The objective participial construction with Participle II is used after:

1) the verbs with a causative meaning (*to have, to get, to make*) denoting that something is done or made for the benefit of the person expressed by the subject.

e.g. Max had his car repaired 2 days ago.

Get this prescription made at the chemist's.

In questions and negative sentences, the auxiliary verb "do" is used.

e.g. Why don't you have your hair waved?

2) the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to feel, to find, to watch, to observe, to notice*).

e.g. When I returned I found the cottage locked. I heard these words mentioned several times.

3) the verbs of mental activity (*to consider, to understand*).

e.g. I consider him engaged at the local theatre.

4) the verbs denoting wish (*to want, to wish, to desire, to like, to prefer*).

e.g. I want the letter posted at once.

We prefer the letter answered by the chief.

1. Read and translate the following sentences. Speak on the verbs after which complex objects are used.

1. She liked changes and recently she had the drawing-room redecorated. 2. But a week later, feeling himself betrayed, hysterical and in terror, Herbert betrayed his wife. 3. I even heard it suggested that he might get the Foreign Office. 4. As he ate the cottage pie that was his portion he felt Blodwen's eye fastened on him. 5. We'll have supper sent up to the suite. 6. About ten minutes later he heard the front door shut. 7. Perhaps she refused to have him sent for because she knew he would refuse to come. 8. Then I want to have my fortune told. 9. I'll take you to have your hair cut now. 10. He looked up and saw the stars sprinkled above the plane-trees of the square. 11. I should very much like it made clear to me. 12. I do not intend to have my professional reputation compromised. 13. Have you ever visited Scotland and seen the mountains there covered with snow. 14. Have you ever heard his name mentioned before? 15. The manager wishes the cases counted and weighed. 16. The police found the money hidden in a disused garage. 17. "I want it proved," he roared. 18. He heard his name called, turned round, but didn't see anyone.

2. Change the following sentences into negative and interrogative. Remember that you must use the auxiliary verb *do*.

1. I have your taxi kept at the door. 2. She had her hair cut very short, Eton cropped. 3. She had the slips printed. 4. He had his eyes fixed on the picture. 5. He had it all planned before. 6. We had the letter sent there immediately. 7. We had all the films developed yesterday. 8. He had his bag brought down- stairs an hour ago. 9. Jane had her chest X-rayed 3 days ago. 10. My friend had his job lost 6 months ago. 11. For their New Year's Eve party she had all the furniture moved out of the sitting room. 12. I had the suit made yesterday.

3. Use the participles given below as parts of complex objects: *shampooed, cut off, removed, sung, finished, known, saved, changed, translated, seen, covered, deserted, mended, repaired, locked, called, white-washed, made*.

1. They found the door 2. King Charles I had his head 3. Have you ever seen the mountains ... with snow? 4. We want the work ... by Saturday. 5. Please have these letters ... into English. 6. He thought it necessary to have the ceiling of the room 7. We found the house 8. I'd like my hair.... 9. Have you ever heard this opera ... in Italian? 10. He heard his name ... from behind. 11. I've recently had my appendix 12. Have you got your watch ...? 13. They have scarcely any money ... for their old age. 14. You should make your views 15. I'll get the matter ... to. 16. I'd like my shoes 17. Can we have the programme 18. I'm having a new dress

4. Transform the following sentences so as to use subordinate clauses instead of complexes with Participle II.

Model: *He liked to hear his children praised. – He liked to hear when his children were praised.*

1. I heard these topics argued between the scientists for years. 2. Although Harold knew the facts so well he felt himself carried away by the rising current of excitement in the air. 3. With satisfaction Simon saw his friend's face relaxed. 4. He felt himself compelled to bring this action. 5. She has found me unaltered; but I have found her changed. 6. About an hour had passed when he heard the key softly turned, and the door opened. 7. Arrived at the edge of the pond he stood, noting another water-lily opened since yesterday. 8. Hester, suppose you were to find yourself discharged from the faculty? 9. Hope felt the bag drawn away from her. 10. I saw

Kate addressed by a stranger. 11. Despite himself, Maurice felt his attention caught. 12. Do you always like to hear your name spoken in public? 13. I consider Mike badly organized. He's failed in all the exams. 14. When I came to my friend's I found the door locked.

5. Transform the following sentences so as to use complex objects with Participle II.

Model: *When I called on her in the morning I found that she had gone. – When I called on her in the morning I found her gone.*

1. When he went back he found that his wife was already dressed. 2. On entering his room I found that he was absorbed in a detective novel. 3. He felt that his cheeks were flushed by the fever. 4. He found that Leila was calm and delighted. 5. I want someone to type this letter. 6. His thoughts wandered and he found that his mind was filled with memories of the past. 7. I heard that his name had been mentioned several times during the conversation. 8. I saw that Mrs. Brown's advertisement was printed in the local newspaper. 9. When Mary returned home she found that a telephone had been installed in their flat. 10. I tried the handle, and found that the door was unlocked. 11. They found that the treasure was hidden in a cellar. 12. Yesterday I saw a car that was painted in many colours. 13. He wants someone to do the work immediately. 14. We considered that the problem was solved. 15. I found that the room was furnished with a Spartan simplicity.

6. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Вона чула, як назвали її прізвище. 2. Я хочу, щоб робота була закінчена в неділю. 3. Я зараз шию нову сукню. 4. У середу їй пофарбували і підстригли волосся. 5. їй видалили два зуби. 6. Я хочу, щоб мої вказівки точно виконувалися. 7. йому слід підстригтися. 8. Точно ясно, що він дуже хотів, щоб намалювали його портрет. 9. Вам треба перевірити зір. 10. Я хочу полагодити годинник. 11. я хочу побілити стелю й обклеїти стіни шпалерами. 12. вони виявили, що двері зачинені на ключ. 13. Де вам шили цей костюм? 14. Мені пофарбували двері тільки минулого тижня. Вам подобається колір? 15. Вона побачила, що я ані трохи не змінився. 16. Я чув, як це було сказано кілька разів. 17. Ми спостерігали, як ремонтували машину. 18. Я бачив, як мішки завантажили. 19. вони виявили, що будинок занедбаний. 20. вона сказала, що хоче, щоб ці документи надрукували якомога швидше. 21. Коли ви, нарешті, налаштуєте свій рояль? 22. нам відремонтували будинок до того, як ми поїхали на південь. 23. Коли вам побудували гараж? 24. Ти міг би домогтися, щоб його звільнили. 25. Вони хотіли, щоб комітет скликали в понеділок.

THE NOMINATIVE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH PARTICIPLE II

The Nominative Absolute Participial construction with Participle II

The nominative absolute participial construction consists of the nominal element (a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case) and Participle II. The nominal element.

The nominative absolute participial construction has the function of:

1) a detached adverbial modifier of **attendant circumstances**

She was smoking now, her eyes narrowed thoughtfully.

2) a detached adverbial modifier of **cause (reason)**

We began to talk, but my attention distracted by my thoughts, I took small notice of him.

3) a detached adverbial modifier of **time**

This said, he turned and fixed his eyes on me.

4) a detached adverbial modifier of **condition**

Tom once gone, would he ever return?

5) a detached adverbial modifier of **manner**

He sat on the sofa, his legs crossed.

1. Read and translate the sentences. Find the Nominative Absolute Participial Constructions (with Participle II) and state their functions.

1. She stood listlessly, her head dropped upon her breast. 2. She rose from the bed and removed her coat and stood motionless, her head bent, her hands clasped before her. 3. Nose raised up in the air, she walked right past me. 4. Jack sat silent, his long legs stretched out. 5. The speaker faced the audience, his hand raised for silence. 6. He sat down quickly, his face buried in his hands. 7. Clyde sat up, his eyes fixed not on anything here but rather on the distant scene at the lake. 8. Arms linked; the two women walked over to the sofa, and sat down. 9. She stood silent, her lips pressed together. 10. Shoulders hunched, hair streaming in the wind, toes curled over the edge of the board, Jackie rode the big wave. 11. Catherine sat studying the illustration on her drawing board, her head held on one side, her eyes narrowed slightly as she assessed her work. 12. The work finished, we went home. 13. Forehead wrinkled, mouth pursed, watch ticking, Reese studied the board. 14. Chance was silent, his eyes fixed intent on Silvertip. 15. The mission carried out, they were given a three-day leave. 16. I have something to be thankful for, all things considered.

2. Point out the Absolute Participial Construction (with Participle I or Participle II). Comment on its function, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He reached out across the table, his hand covering Marsha's. 2. Iris stared out over the landscape, her chin cupped in her hand. 3. She stopped, a red spot being on each cheekbone. 4. Old Jack stood at the bottom of the bed, his hands folded in front of him. 5. And, cigar being in mouth, old Jack said: «Play me some Chopin. » 6. Weather permitting, we shall go fishing tomorrow. 7. They set out with a lantern, Baddy telling his tale. 8. Tom stood by the radio panel, his fingers fixed on the clock. 9. He stood, his hands being behind him. 10. One night, Winifred having gone to the theatre, he sat down with a cigar, to think. 11. He looked at her intently, his curiosity reviving. 12. They were on the porch and Rhett was bowing right and left, his hat being in his hand, his voice sounding cool and soft. 13. Less than half an hour ago, after Dodo's leave-taking, he had paced the suite living-room, his thoughts confused and troubled. 14. Archie sat on a stool by the hearth, his back turned against the fireplace. 15. The child sat on a rock perched high up on the river's bank. Elbows on knees, chin cupped in hands, she sat perfectly still, her eyes turned on the family of ducks circling around on the surface of the dark water, listening to the splashes of water rushing down the dappled stones of the river's bed. 16. The signal given, the rocket starts immediately. 17. Members of Parliament vote automatically with their parties, the limit for the division being six minutes. 18. It being Sunday, the library was closed. 19. The astronomer proceeded with his observation, the sky having cleared. 20. There being many people in the conference hall, we could hardly enter it.

Exercise 3. Point out the Absolute Participial Construction (with Participle I or Participle II). Comment on its function, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Eyes being bright, Peg shot up her head. 2. Pale-lipped, his heart beating fast, Andrew followed the secretary. 3. Head bent down, the bull charged straight at the man. 4. Chin rested on his chest, Finch dozed. 5. My fears laid to rest; I climbed into the plane for my first solo flight. 6. I stood on the deck, the wind whipping my hair. 7. His voice breaking with emotion, Ed thanked us for the award. 8. The naughty boy was carried upstairs, arms waving and legs kicking. 9. She hurried along, her heels crunching in the packed snow. 10. Now she stood at the front door, her hand on the brass knocker. 11. Pulling open the door leading into the hall, Maxim suddenly stopped dead, one foot poised on the step. 12. «Don't tell me he's proposed to you already!» Katy cried, sitting up in the bed, her eyes flashing and flying open in surprise and alarm. 13. My knuckles white, my hair standing on end, my stomach heaving, I gripped the wheel of the skidding car. 14. Horns honking, truck drivers yelling, policemen whistling, the traffic inched along. 15. All the things having been packed up, we can set off. 16. There being little time left, they had to hurry. 17. This being done, they left for home. 18. The old man tried to get up, the young man helping him. 19. This being difficult to settle the matter, we decided to meet again the following day. 20. He stood aside, with his hands in his pockets, watching her.

21. The main feature of nation's economy is the consolidation of the capital at an unprecedented level with profits going up, wages going down and inflation accelerating.

4. Point out the Absolute Participial Construction (with Participle I or Participle II). Comment on its function, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Many men preceded Newton in the field of mechanics, perhaps the most outstanding being Galileo. 2. Red phosphorus being a more stable form, its reactions are much less violent. 3. The fuel exhausted, the engine stopped. 4. Probably the first metals used by man were gold, silver, and copper, these metals being found in nature in the native or metallic state. 5. Electrons moving through a wire, electrical energy is generated. 6. Mars has two satellites, Deimos («Horror») and Phobos («Fear»), both discovered during the favourable opposition of 1877. 7. A magnet being broken in two, each piece becomes a magnet with its own pair of poles. 8. Many technical and scientific problems having been solved, the first space flight could be realized. 9. An electron leaving the surface, the metal becomes positively charged. 10. The plant supplied with good raw materials, the quality of products has been much improved.

5. Replace the clauses with the Absolute Participial Construction (with Participle I or Participle II).

1. As the rain had ruined my hat, I had to buy a new one. 2. After this was done, they set off with light hearts. 3. As few people were buying his pencils, he could hardly earn a living. 4. As there was a severe storm at sea, the steamer couldn't leave the port. 5. As it was Sunday, the library was closed. 6. As the weather was fine, they went for a walk. 7. As the Professor was ill, the lecture was put off. 8. As the book was translated into Russian, it could be read by everybody.

Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction with Participle II

Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction with Participle II

A Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction differs from a Non-Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction in that it is introduced by the preposition *with* and its nominal element is hardly ever expressed by a pronoun; it's more closely related to the predicate verb and is seldom set off by a comma.

The main syntactical function of the construction is an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances or manner.

She went on reading *with her eyes fixed on the lines*.

It is unhealthy to sleep *with the windows shut*.

1. Point out the Prepositional Absolute Participial phrase. Comment on its function, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Twenty minutes later he came out of number seven, pale, **with his lip tightly compressed and an odd expression on his face**. 2. Little Oliver was lying on the ground **with his shirt unbuttoned and his head thrown back**. 3. She sat on the steps, **with her arms crossed upon her knees**. 4. He stood, **with his arms folded**. 5. Lonnie stood looking at the lorry rolling away, **with his cheek burning and his fists clenched**.

2. Translate the following sentences into English using the Absolute Participial Constructions (with Participle I or Participle II).

1. Оскільки погода була гарна, вони пішли гуляти. 2. Оскільки було дуже пізно, вони залишилися вдома. 3. Коли роботу було закінчено, я зміг узяти місячну відпустку. 4. Оскільки справи йдуть так, я б хотів попросити його повернутися наступного тижня. 5. Коли обід закінчився, вони пішли в кабінет батька. 6. Якщо погода дозволить, ми поїдемо на риболовлю. 7. За доповіддю відбулося обговорення, причому в ньому взяли участь

іноземні гості. 8. Після того, як було ухвалено резолюцію, голова оголосив перерву. 9. В Англії мало природних ресурсів, і більша частина сировини ввозиться з інших країн.

3. Translate the following sentences into English using the Absolute Participial Constructions (with Participle I or Participle II).

1. Він увійшов до кімнати з валізою в руці. 2. Він вийшов із кабінету директора в гарному настрої. 3. Батько з люлькою в роті встав з-за письмового столу і підійшов до книжкової шафи. 4. Коли мама запропонувала обідати в саду, усі швидко вийшли з дому. 5. Коли стіл було накрито, мама покликала гостей. 6. Він увійшов без стуку, бо двері були відчинені. 7. Він спокійно лежав на дивані з книгою в руках. 8. Він ішов швидко, з опущеною головою, не дивлячись на всі боки. 9. Маленька Аня перестала грати на роялі й стала біля вікна, повернувшись спиною до всіх. 10. Джейн ішла на невеликій відстані від усіх зі шкіряною сумкою в руці. 11. Вона продовжувала слухати своїх друзів із широко розплющеними від подиву очима. 12. Після обіду настало довге мовчання: Анна думала про дітей, а діти - про неї. 13. Якщо погода покращиться, ми зможемо поїхати за місто завтра. 14. Вона спокійно чекала друзів біля театру, сховавши підборіддя в хутряний комір.

4. Join the following sentences using Participles.

Model: *He got off his horse. He began searching for something on the ground. – Getting off his horse, he began searching for something on the ground.*

I had seen photographs of the place. I had no desire to go there. – Having seen photographs of the place, I had no desire to go there.

The speaker refused to continue. He was infuriated by the interruptions. – Infuriated by the interruptions, the speaker refused to continue.

1. I knew that he was poor. I offered to pay his fare. 2. We barricaded the windows. We assembled in the hall. 3. She became tired of my complaints about the programme. She turned it off. 4. He found no one at home. He left the house in a bad temper. 5. She hoped to find the will. She searched everywhere. 6. The criminal removed all traces of his crime. He left the building. 7. He realized that he had missed the last train. He began to walk. 8. He was exhausted by his work. He threw himself on his bed. 9. He had spent all his money. He decided to go home and ask his father for a job. 10. He escaped from prison. He looked for a place where he could get food. 11. She didn't want to hear the story again. She had heard it all before. 12. They found the money. They began quarrelling about how to divide it. 13. She entered the room suddenly. She found them smoking. 14. I turned on the light. I was astonished at what I saw. 15. We visited the museum. We decided to have lunch in the park. 16. He offered to show us the way home. He thought we were lost. 17. He found his revolver. He loaded it. He sat down facing the door. 18. She asked me to help her. She realized that she couldn't move it alone. 19. He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner. 20. He addressed the congregation. He said he was sorry to see how few of them had been able to come. 21. He thought he must have made a mistake somewhere. He went through his calculations again. 22. I have looked through the fashion magazines. I realize that my clothes are hopelessly out of date. 23. The tree had fallen across the road. It had been uprooted by the gale. 24. People were sleeping in the next room. They were wakened by the sound of breaking glass. 25. I knew that the murderer was still at large. I was extremely reluctant to open the door. 26. He stole the silver. He looked for a place to hide it. 27. We were soaked to the skin. We eventually reached the station. 28. I sat in the front row. I used opera glasses. I saw everything beautifully. 29. One evening you will be sitting by the fire. You will remember this day. 30. I didn't like to sit down. I knew that there were ants in the grass. 31. She believed that she could trust him absolutely. She gave him a blank cheque. 32. Slates were ripped off by the gale. They fell on people passing below. 33. The lion found his cage door open. He saw no sign of his keeper. He left the cage and walked slowly towards the zoo entrance. 34. The government once tried to tax people according to the size of their houses.

They put a tax on windows. 35. I had heard that the caves were dangerous. I didn't like to go any further without a light. 36. She wore extremely fashionable clothes. She was surrounded by photographers and pressmen. She swept up to the microphone.

5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Пишаючись своїм батьком, він часто говорить про нього. 2. Виступаючи на зборах, я забув згадати про цей факт. 3. Як звати людину, яка зараз розмовляє телефоном? 4. Нарешті вона побачила людину, яка врятувала її сина. 5. Деякі питання, які порушуються в доповіді, заслуговують на серйозну увагу. 6. Вони усиновили (adopted) хлопчика, який втратив батьків в авіаційній катастрофі. 7. Не знайшовши потрібної книги вдома, я вирушив до бібліотеки. 8. Не виконавши роботу вчасно, я змушений був вибачитися перед ними. 9. Пробувши в Лондоні близько тижня, я міг розповісти їм багато цікавого. 10. Подорожуючи країною, ми познайомилися з багатьма пам'ятками. 11. Зрозумівши, що не зможе виконати всю роботу сама, вона попросила мене про допомогу. 12. Знаючи, що в мене достатньо часу, щоб дійти до кінотеатру, я не поспішав. 13. Приїхавши того вечора до свого друга, я дізнався, що його ще немає вдома, але що він прийде з хвилини на хвилину. 14. Побачивши, що таксі під'їхало до будинку, він узяв речі і швидко спустився вниз.

REVISION

1. Read the following sentences, state the forms and functions of participles. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Clumsily, feeling more awkward than she had felt since she was a young girl, Lucy picked up her bag and her gloves and leaving Tony standing in the middle of the room, looking tired and coldly amused, she followed Dora into the hallway. 2. He stopped, when he saw Lucy, and looked, puzzled, politely, not recognizing her for a moment, from her to Dora. 3. "What's the matter with you?" she asked, smiling, but irritated. 4. For a moment, he stood in silence, seeming to be studying his son, puzzled, intense, loving as though searching for some minute, hidden secret in the soft pleased welcoming child's face. 5. She sat there for almost an hour, her eyes fixed upon the points of light on the other shore. 6. She looked up, smiling. She was beginning to feel happy about his being there. 7. He was worried about Edith, living in that cottage of hers all alone. 8. The sun had set, and it was twilight, the sky was growing dark, bringing to view the twinkling stars. 9. The amazing thing about the whole situation was that they were able to live for a long time without water. 10. The town deserted since the battles, stood black and half-ruined. 11. Having signed the will I left the office. 12. Fees paid in advance are not refundable. 13. Sitting in a front row we had an excellent view. I noticed him coming along the road. 14. Students starting on Monday should arrive by 8.30. 15. Ray, depressed after his unfortunate road accident, decided to go on a holiday. 16. Not having studied, I failed the exam. 17. Jane ate her dinner sitting in front of the television. 18. I watched boats sailing by. 19. The football player, turning awkwardly, sprained his ankle. 20. I don't like to see singing birds in cages. 21. Being my friend he helped me a lot. 22. Finding him a bore I kept out of his way. 23. He locked the cupboard quickly, as if trying to hide something from us. 24. We were delayed by heavy tracks loaded into the ship. 25. Having been invited to speak to you I must say a few words. 26. Covered with confusion, they apologized abjectly. 27. When questioned, he denied being a member of the group. 28. Considered works of art, they were admitted into the country without customs duties. 29. I can see several people standing. 30. Changed into a smart suit, she looked gorgeous. 31. They were well-behaved and well-spoken children. 32. When writing a business letter begin with "Dear Sir". 33. He moved his lips as if trying to speak. 34. I was asked if I had noticed anyone leaving the building. 35. We all suddenly sensed danger approaching. 36. You should have your eyes tested. Having run into serious difficulties, I count on your support and understanding. 38. Gracie loved her parents and couldn't bear to see them so disappointed. 39. My eyes hurting, I put the book aside.

2. Choose the right form of the participle.

1. The girl (writing, written) on the blackboard is our best pupil. Everything (writing, written) here is quite right. 2. The house (surrounding, surrounded) by tall trees is very beautiful. The wall (surrounding, surround- ed) the house was very high. 3. Who is that boy (doing, done) his homework at that table? The exercises (doing, done) by the pupils were easy. 4. The girl (washing, washed) the floor is my sister. The floor (washing, washed) by Helen looked very clean. 5. We listen to the girls (singing, sung) Russian folk songs. We listened to the Russian folk songs (singing, sung) by the girls. 6. Do you know the girl (playing, played) in the garden? 7. The book (writing, written) by this scientist is very interesting. 8. Translate the words (writing, written) on the blackboard. 9. We could not see the sun (covering, covered) by dark clouds. 10. The (losing, lost) book was found at last. 11. (Going, gone) along the street, I met Mary and Ann. 12. Read the (translating, translated) sentences once more. 13. Name some places (visiting, visited) by you last year. 14. I picked up the pencil (lying, lain) on the floor. 15. She was reading the book (buying, bought) the day before. 16. Yesterday we were at a conference (organizing, organized) by the pupils of the 10th form. 17. (Ta ing, taken) the girl by the hand, she led her across the street. 18. It was not easy to find the (losing, lost) stamp. 19. I shall show you a picture (painting, painted) by Hogarth. 20. Here is the letter (receiving, received) by me yester- day. 21. Look at the beautiful flowers (gathering, gathered) by the children. 22. His hat (blowing, blown) off by the wind was lying in the middle of the street. 23. "How do you like the film?" he asked, (turning, turned) towards me. 24. When we came nearer, we saw two boys (coming, come) towards us. 25. I think that the boy (standing, stood) there is his brother.

3. Open the brackets and fill in with the proper participle.

1. He fell asleep (exhaust) by the journey. 2. She entered the dining room (accompany) by her husband and her father. 3. A snake (sleep) in the grass will bite if anyone treads upon it. 4. (Fill) his pockets with apples the boy was about to run away when he saw the owner of the garden with a stick in his hand. 5. It was a bright Sunday morning of early summer (promise) heat. 6. When I came home, I found the table (lay). 7. (Judge) by the colour of the sun it should be windy tomorrow. 8. (Arrive) at a big seaport, I started to look for a job. 9. He had received an urgent message (ask) him to telephone Sir Matthew. 10. He looked at groups of young girls (walk) arm in arm. 11. In the wood they sat down on a (fall) tree. 12. (See) from the hill the city looks magnificent. 13. (Not know) where to go he turned to a passer by. 14. (Lock) in her room she threw a fit. 15. (Address) the parcel, I went out at once to post it. 16. She often took care of my little sister (give) me a possibility to play with other boys. 17. (Wash) her face in cold water, she came up to the win- dow and shut it. 18. Paul sat down again, evidently (change) his mind about going. 19. She cut her foot on a piece of (break) glass, half (hide) in the sand. 20. (annoy) by the constant interruptions, the Minister refused to continue, (demand) that the trouble-makers leave. 21. She averted her eyes each time she found herself (stare) at. 22. The man behaved as if (hide) something tragic. 23. Miss Honey couldn't help admiring this (astonish) child. 24. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (work) as an interpreter for many years. 25. He always keeps a diary while (travel). 26. (Support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk. 27. I've never seen a man (rain) through having extravagant habits. 28. (explain) everything, I want to tell you how sorry I am. 29. Not (know) a word of Dutch, she was taken to the police station. 30. There was a long line of (abandon) trucks and carts on the road (lead) up the bridge. 31. (lie) in bed, (worry) and (depress), Sarah started to think once again about the problem. 32. Students (will) to take the exam should give their names to the Principal by Friday.

4. Point out the objective participial construction.

1. Suddenly I felt a soft hand touching my face. 2. It was getting dark, and soon I heard the Morlocks approaching me. 3. Meanwhile she had the satisfaction of seeing him appointed

Recorder of a Welsh town. 4. I never saw him giving anybody a haircut or a shave, although I suppose one or two people went into his shop by mistake. 5. I could see black hair on the floor and feel my head becoming colder and colder with exposure. 6. He heard the telephone buzzing at the other end, and then the click of a lifted receiver and a man's voice, a sleepy voice, saying: "Hullo. Yes." 7. Paul felt life changing around him. 8. She heard him running quickly indoors. 9. Clara heard him laughing, in a way she hated, with the girls down the next room. 10. Certainly she never saw herself living happily through a lifetime with him. 11. He could hardly arrest Watson, but when he saw a man actually climbing out of the pantry window there came a limit to his restraint. 12. She could feel him losing himself. 13. He heard the clock ticking audibly and half suspected that he had been dozing. 14. She listened to the wind blowing and the rain falling.

REVISION: NON_FINITE FORM OF THE VERBS

1. Multiple choice.

1. Andrew has given up (smoke).
A) to smoke B) smoking
C) having smoked D) smoke
2. I promised (come) in time.
A) to come B) having come
C) come D) to be coming
3. I saw him yesterday. He seems (lose) weight.
A) losing B) to have lost
C) to lose D) to have been losing
4. Let me (carry) your bag.
A) to carry B) carrying
C) carry D) having carried
5. I don't enjoy (dance) very much.
A) to dance B) dance
C) dancing D) having danced
6. It was so funny. I couldn't help (laugh).
A) laughing B) laugh
C) to laugh D) being laughed
7. Would you mind (close) the door, please?
A) close B) closing
C) to close D) closed
8. I'd prefer (get) a taxi.
A) getting B) to get
C) get D) having got
9. He is very good at (learn) languages.
A) to learn B) learn
C) being learnt D) learning
10. Nick is used to (live) alone.
A) live B) having lived
C) to be living D) living
11. John insisted on (pay) for the meal.
A) to pay B) having paid
C) paying D) being paid
12. It's no use (worry) about it.
A) worrying B) to worry
C) to have worried D) worry
13. I had difficulty (get) a permission.
A) to get B) having got

2. Use the proper form of the non-finite verb instead of the infinitive in brackets.

1. The children were taught not to speak to the grown-ups unless (speak) to. 2. (Power) in front of the explorers, rose a great range of mountains (cover) with ice. 3. They did all, as (instruct). 4. When (interview), the scientist refuse to comment on the latest discovery. 5. The patient (operate) on yesterday is feeling better now. 6. You must have your husband (operate) on. 7. The students watched their professor (operate) on the man. 8. While (give) evidence the witness avoided looking at the accused. 9. They looked at her with surprise as though not (believe) her story. 10. The girl stopped before the (close) door.

3. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1. When the painter felt the ladder (begin) (slip) he grabbed the glitter (save) himself from (fall). 2. The snow kept (fall) and the workmen grew tired of (try) (keep) the roads clear. 3. He offered (lend) me the money. I didn't like (take) it but I had no alternative. 4. What was in the letter? – I don't know. I didn't like (open) it as it wasn't addressed to me. 5. Do you remember (read) about it? – No, at that time I was too young (read) newspapers. 6. Did you remember (book) seats for the theatre tomorrow? – Yes, I have the tickets here. Would you like (keep) them? I am inclined (lose) theatre tickets. 7. Try (avoid) (be) late. He hates (be) kept (wait). 8. I didn't know how (get) to your house so I stopped (ask) the way. 9. I wish my refrigerator would stop (make) that horrible noise. You can't hear anyone (speak). 10. This book tells you how (win) at games without actually (cheat). 11. The gunman began (fire). He felt a bullet (graze) his cheek. 12. He heard the clock (strike) six and knew that it was time for him (get) up. 13. I can hear the bell (ring) but nobody seems (be coming) (open) the door. 14. Did you advise him (go) to the police? – No, I didn't like (give) any advice on such a difficult matter. 15. He wanted (put) my chameleon on a tartan rug and (watch) it (change) colour. 16. It is easy (see) animals on the road in daylight but sometimes at night it is very difficult (avoid) (hit) them. 17. The tire seems (be) out. – It can't be quite out. I can hear the wood (crackle). 18. I caught him (climb) over my wall. I asked him (explain) but he refused (say) anything, so in the end I had (let) him (go). 19. When at last I succeeded in (convince) him that I wanted (get) home quickly he put his foot on the accelerator and I felt the car (leap) forward. 20. I'm not used to (drive) on the left. – When you see everyone else (do) it you'll find it quite easy (do) yourself. 21. It is pleasant (sit) by the fire at night and (hear) the wind (howl) outside. 22. There was no way of (get) out of the building except by (climb) down a rope and Ann was too terrified (do) this. 23. We heard the engines (roar) as the plane began (move) and we saw the people on the ground (wave) good-bye. 24. It's no good (write) to him; he never answers letters. The only thing (do) is (go) and (see) him. 25. Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) across it? – I didn't like (cross) it because of the bull. I never see a bull without (think) that it wants (chase) me. 26. The people in the flat below seem (be having) a party. You can hear the champagne corks (thud) against their ceiling. 27. I don't like (get) bills but when I do get them I like (pay) them promptly. 28. Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (stand) at the door. 29. The boys next door used (like) (make) and (fly) model airplanes, but they seem to have stopped (do) that now. 30. I knew I wasn't the first (arrive), for I saw smoke (rise) from the chimney. 31. We watched the men (saw) the tree and as we were walking away heard it (fall) with a tremendous crash. 32. I hate (see) a child (cry). 33. We watched the children (jump) from a window and (fall) into a blanket held by the people below. 34. It is very unpleasant (wake) up and (hear) the rain (beat) on the windows. 35. He saw the lorry (begin) (roll) forwards but he was too far away (do) anything (stop) it. 36. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone (slip) on a banana skin.

4. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1. 'I was lonely at first,' the old man admitted, 'but after a time I got used to (live) alone and even got (like) it.' 2. Before trains were invented people used (travel) on horseback or in stage coaches. It used (take) a stage coach three days (go) from London to Bath. 3. I meant (buy) an evening paper but I didn't see anyone (sell) them. 4. *Tom*: I want (catch) the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. *Ann*: But that means (get) up at 6.00; and you're not very good at (get) up early, are you? 5. He accepted the cut in salary without complaint because he was afraid (complain). He was afraid of (lose) his job. 6. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school for the first time and (be) frightened and (put) her finger in her mouth. And she remembers her teacher (tell) her (take) it out. 7. Did you remember (lock) the car? – No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now. 8. No, I didn't move the bomb. I was afraid (touch) it; I was afraid of (be) blown to pieces! 9. Next time we go (house-hunt), remember (ask) the agent for clear directions. I wasted hours (look) for the last house. 10. *Tom*: Let's (go) for a swim. *Ann*: I'm not particularly keen on (swim). What about (go) for a drive instead? 11. The hunters expected (be paid) by the foot for the snakes they caught. This meant (take) the snakes out of the sack and (measure) them. They seemed (expect) me (do) it; but I wasn't particularly anxious (be) the first (die) of snakebite. 12. After (spend) two days (argue) about where to go for their holiday they decided (not go) anywhere. 13. He is talking about (give) up his job and (go) (live) in the country. 14. I was just about (leave) the office when the phone rang. It was my wife; she wanted me (call) at the butcher's on my way home. 15. He said, 'I'm terribly sorry to (keep) you (wait).' I said, 'It doesn't matter at all,' but he went on (apologize) for nearly five minutes! 16. The lecturer began by (tell) us where the island was, and went on (talk) about its history. 17. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living, but I mean (show) him that he is wrong. 18. *Tom*: I can't get my car (start) on cold mornings. *Jack*: Have you tried (fill) the radiator with hot water? That sometimes helps. 19. Did he manage (carry) the trunk upstairs? – No, he didn't. He isn't strong enough (move) it, let alone (carry) it upstairs.

5. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1. *Peter*: Wouldn't it be better (ask) Tom (leave) his camera at home? *Jack*: It would be no good (ask) Tom (do) that. It would be like (ask) a woman (travel) without a handbag. 2. I've got the loaf; now I'm looking for a breadknife (cut) it with. – I saw Paul (sharpen) a pencil with the breadknife a minute ago. 3. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way. 4. When I caught them (cheat) me, I stopped (buy) petrol there and started (deal) with your garage instead. 5. Do you feel like (dine) out or would you rather (have) dinner at home? – I'd like (go) out. I always enjoy (have) dinner in a restaurant. 6. Your hair needs (cut). You'd better (have) it done tomorrow, unless you'd like me (have) a go at it for you. 7. I tried (convince) him that I was perfectly capable of (manage) on my own, but he insisted on (help) me. 8. *Jack*: I don't mind (travel) by bus, but I hate (stand) in queues. *Tom*: I don't care for (queue) either; and you waste so much time (wait) for buses. I think it's better (go) by tube, or taxi. 9. He took to (follow) me about and (criticize) my work till I threatened (hit) him. 10. I have (stay) here; I'm on duty. But you needn't (wait); you're free (go) whenever you like. 11. In *Animal Farm* the old pig urged the animals (rebel) against man but he warned them (not adopt) man's habits. 12. There is no point in (arrive) half an hour early. We'd only have (wait). – I don't mind (wait). It's better (be) too early than too late. 13. I always try (come) in quietly but they always hear me (go) upstairs. It's impossible (climb) an old wooden staircase at night without (make) a noise. 14. If you agree (work) for me I'll see about (get) you a work permit. 15. We'd better (start) early. We don't want (risk) (get) caught in a traffic jam. 16. He suggested (call) a meeting and (let) the workers (decide) the matter themselves. 17. *Jack*: Don't forget (take) a hacksaw with you. *Ann*: What's a hacksaw? And why should I (take) one with

me? *Jack*: It's a tool for (cut) metal. You see, Tom is bound (get) into trouble for (take) photographs of the wrong things, and you'll be arrested with him. With a hacksaw you'll be able (saw) through the bars of your cell and (escape).

6. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1. We suggested (sleep) in hotels but the children were anxious (camp) out. 2. *Paul*: Would you like (come) to a lecture on Wagner tonight? *Ann*: No, thanks. I like (listen) to music but I don't like (listen) to people (talk) about it. 3. If you want the milkman (leave) you milk in the morning, remember (put) a milk bottle outside your door. 4. They let us park motorcycles here but they won't allow us (park) cars. 5. They don't allow (smoke) in the auditorium; they don't want (risk) (set) it on fire, but you can (smoke) in the foyer during the interval. 6. Mr Shaw is very busy (write) his memoirs. He is far too busy (receive) callers (he is so busy that he can't receive callers), so you'd better just (go) away. 7. What about (buy) double quantities of everything today? That will save (shop) again later in the week. 8. The inspector asked (see) my ticket and when I wasn't able (find) it he made me (buy) another. – He probably suspected you of (try) (travel) without one. 9. Would you like me (turn) down the radio a bit? – No, it's all right. I'm used to (work) with the radio on. 10. One of the gang suggested (take) the body out to sea, (drop) it overboard and (pretend) that it had been an accident. 11. I want the boy (grow) up hating violence but his father keeps (buy) him guns and swords. – It's almost impossible (prevent) boys (play) soldiers. 12. Would you children mind (keep) quiet for a moment? I'm trying (fill) in a form. – It's no use (ask) children (keep) quiet. They can't help (make) a noise. 13. I'm thinking of (go) to Oxford tomorrow on my motorbike. Would you like (come)? – No, thanks. I want (go) Oxford, but I'd rather (go) by train. I loathe (travel) by road. 14. Let's (go) (fish) today. There's a nice wind. What about (come) with us, Ann? – No, thanks. I'm very willing (cut) sandwiches for you but I've no intention of (waste) the afternoon (sit) in a boat (watch) you two (fish). 15. He resented (be) asked (wait). He expected the minister (see) him at once. 16. The police have put up a railing here (prevent) people (rush) out of the station and (dash) straight across the road. 17. All day long we saw the trees (toss) in the wind and heard the waves (crash) against the rocks. 18. I didn't mean (eat) anything but the cakes looked so good that I couldn't resist (try) one. 19. Do you feel like (walk) there or shall we (take) a bus? – I'd rather (go) by bus. Besides, it'll take ages (get) there on foot. 20. All right. When would you like (start)? In a few minutes? – Oh, let's wait till it stops (rain); otherwise we will get wet through (walk) to the bus station.

7. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible.

1. The old miser spent all his time (count) his money and (think) up new hiding-places. He kept (move) it about because he was terrified of (be robbed). He used (get) up at night sometimes (make) sure it was still there. 2. Jack suggested (let) one flat and (keep) the other for myself. But Tom advised me (sell) the whole house. 3. The child used (lean) on the gate (watch) the people (go) to work in the mornings and (come) home in the evenings. And he used to hear them (shout) greetings to each other and (talk) loudly. 4. He soon got (know) most of them and even managed (learn) the greetings. Then they began (greet) him too on their way to work and sometimes would stop (talk) to him on their way home. 5. He succeeded in (untie) himself, (climb) out of the window and (crawl) along a narrow ledge to the window of the next room. 6. Did you have any trouble (find) the house? – No, but I had a lot of difficulty (get) in. Nobody seemed (know) where the key was. 7. Bill couldn't bear (see) anyone (sit) round idly. Whenever he found me (relax) or (read) he would (produce) a job which, he said, had (be) done at once. I wasted a morning (perform) his ridiculous tasks and spent the rest of the weekend (keep) out of his way. 8. After (spend) a week in the cottage, he decided that he didn't really enjoy (live) in

the country and began (think) of an excuse for (sell) the cottage and (return) to London. 9. It's no use (argue) with him. You might as well (argue) with a stone wall. He is incapable of (see) anyone else's point of view. 10. I'm delighted (hear) that you can come on Saturday. We are all looking forward to (see) you. Remember (bring) your rubber boots. 11. He has been charged with (receive) and (sell) stolen goods. He has admitted (receive) but denies (sell) them. The fact is that he hasn't had time (sell) them yet. 12. He noticed the helicopter (hover) over the field. Then, to his astonishment, he saw a rope ladder (be) thrown out and three men (climb) down it. He watched them (run) across the field and out through a gate. Later he saw a car with four men in it (come) out of the lane (lead) to the field. 13. He admitted that it was possible that the car happened (be passing) and that the three men persuaded the driver (give) them a lift; but thought it much more likely that they had arranged for the car (pick) them up and that the driver had been waiting in the lane for the helicopter (drop) them. 14. What about (have) a picnic in Piccadilly Circus? – What an extraordinary place (have) a picnic! Fancy (sit) there with the traffic (swirl) round you and the pigeons (take) bites out of your sandwiches! 15. Would you mind (write) your address on the back of the cheque and (show) us some proof of your identity? 16. Let's (swim) across. – I'm not really dressed for (swim). What's wrong with (go) round by the bridge?

8. Choose the right variant.

1. All the vegetables ... on that farm are free from chemicals.

- A) grown B) having grown C) to grow
D) to be growing E) grow

2. The only non-violent sport ... by the King of England was golf in the 1400s, when the King thought his soldiers weren't doing enough archery practice.

- A) banning B) to ban C) having banned
D) to be banned E) to be banning

3. Johnny, ... Italian, didn't enjoy the Opera as much as Sonya did.

- A) not being understood B) not to understand
C) not to be understood D) not understand
E) not understanding

4. ... ten times as fast as the old printer, the new printer has made our office much more efficient.

- A) To print B) Printing C) Being printed
D) To be printed E) Printed

5. ... several competitions as an amateur, he decided to play professionally.

- A) To win B) Won C) Having won
D) Being won E) To be won

6. Before the lecture, you'll be given some notes ... Freud's theory of the Ego and Alter Ego.

- A) explaining B) to be explained C) explained
D) being explained E) having explained

7. ... of the dangers many times by his mother, Cameron never swam in the river.

- A) To warn B) Having been warned C) To have warned
D) Having warned E) To be warning

8. The bridge, ... to the town by the Horticultural Society in 1882, crosses the river from the road to the park.

- A) having given B) given C) to give
D) giving E) to be giving

9. ... the required score in the qualifying round, the former champion will not take place in the final.

- A) Not to reach B) Not being reached
C) Not having been reached D) Not having reached
E) Not to be reaching

10. ... in superstitions, Jess walked confidently under the ladder.

- A) Not to believe B) Not to be believing C) Not believing
D) Not believed E) Not believe

11. All the people ... to the committee are experts in this subject.

- A) appointing B) having appointed C) to appoint
D) to be appointing E) appointed

12. It would be nice if I had someone ... on to look after the shop when we go on holiday.

- A) having relied B) to rely C) relied
D) to be relied E) relying

13. The sand on this beach, ... specially from Spain, is golden and not the black volcanic sand of most of the beaches on this island.

- A) to bring B) bringing C) having brought
D) brought E) to be bringing

14. Stockholm is a city of broad streets and substantial buildings ... of white granite, brick or stone that give the city a clean, tidy appearance.

- A) making B) to make C) made
D) having made E) to be making

15. None of the men ... on the building site have a work permit.

- A) working B) work C) being worked
D) worked E) to be working

8. Multiple choice.

1. He seemed ... all about influenza and said ... was nothing ... about.

- a) to know, it, to worry
b) to be knowing, there, worrying
c) to know, there, to worry
d) to have known, it, to have been worried

2. She put down her book ... me ...; and ... me ... took her workbasket and sat into one of the old-fashioned armchair.

- a) to see, coming in, have welcomed, as usually
b) having seen, to come in, welcoming, usually
c) on seeing, come in, having welcomed, as usual

d) after seeing, having come in, to welcome, in a usual way

3. I don't object ... there, but I don't want ... alone.

- a) to your living, you living
- b) you to live, your living
- c) your living, you to live
- d) to your living, you to live

4. I remember ... that hill in twilight. An age seemed ... since the day that brought me first to London.

- a) descending, to have elapsed
- b) to have descended, to have elapsed
- c) to descend, to elapse
- d) being descended, to be elapsed

5. He stood invisible at the top of the stairs ... Irene ... the letters ... by the ... post.

- a) to watch, to sort, bringing, latest
- b) watching, sorting, brought, last
- c) having watched, sorting, having brought, lat
- d) being watched, having sorted, to have been

6. On his way home Andrew could not help ... what ... charming fellow Ivory had turned out.

- a) to reflect, a to lie
- b) being reflected, the, have been
- c) reflecting, the, be
- d) reflecting, a, to be

7. I wouldn't like ... because I am afraid

- a) drive fast, crashing
- b) to drive fast, of crashing
- c) driving fastly, to crash
- d) to be driven faster, to be crashed

8. ... paper is said ... by ... Chinese.

- a) —, to have been invented, the
- b) the, to have been invented,
- c) —, to have invented, —
- d) the, to be invented, the

9. There is no point to ... him. He is ... last man in the world ... by any such circumstances.

- a) to speak, the, to trouble
- b) to speak, __, being troubled
- c) speaking, a, be troubled
- d) in speaking, the, to be troubled

10. It's high time you ... like that. He is fond ... fun of everybody.

- a) get used to him to behave, to make
- b) used to his behaving, about making
- c) got used to his behaving, of making
- d) used to behave, to make

11. He felt ... something from him and demanded ... truth. He wasn't worth ... lie.
 a) them to hide, to tell, the, telling, the
 b) them hiding, they will tell, a, to tell, a
 c) they were hiding, being told, the, telling, a
 d) they hide, telling, a, telling, the
12. ... words about the author himself, the lecturer went on ... of his works.
 a) after saying, a few, to speak
 b) saying, few, to speak
 c) having said, few, speaking
 d) to have said, a few, speaking
13. She was looking forward to ... the leading part ... that she was greatly ... at not even ... it.
 a) giving, playing, disappointing, being offered
 b) to be given, to play, disappointed, to be offend
 c) being given, to play, disappointed, being offered
 d) give, playing, disappointed, offering
14. Did you remember ... the parcel I gave you? – Yes, I remember ... it a week ago.
 a) to post, posting
 b) to post, to post
 c) posting, to post
 d) posting, posting
15. You ... go and check everything by yourself unless you ... it.
 a) would better, want him to do it
 b) had rather, don't want his doing
 c) had better, want him to do it
 d) would rather, don't want him to do
16. The accused men ... near the bank during the robbery. It's no use ... the case without direct

 a) deny being somewhere, Investigating, evidence
 b) denies to be anywhere, to Investigate, evidences
 c) deny being anywhere, investigating, evidence
 d) denies to be somewhere, to investigate, evidences
17. You ... your children ... their own way in life.
 a) are to let, to go
 b) have letting, going
 c) have to let, go
 d) are to let, gone
18. I suggest ... as soon as possible. I ... before sunset.
 a) us to start, would rather to come
 b) our starting, had rather come
 c) us starting, would prefer to come
 d) our starting, would rather come
19. I am afraid ... to him. What if he really has the power to stop ... there, and means ... them
 against me?
 a) to speak, me go, to turn

- b) of speaking, my going, turning
- c) to speak, my going, to turn
- d) speaking, me going, to turn

20. He's always regretted ... school so young. He has not got enough qualifications and education. Unfortunately, he often receives letters ... with "Dear sir, we regret ... you that your application was turned down."

- a) leaving, beginning, to inform
- b) to leave, to begin, to inform
- c) leaving, beginning, informing
- d) to leave, to begin, informing

10. Complete the following sentences. Pay attention to the non-finite forms of the verb.

1. Beginning to pour tea 2. While translating the text 3. To be a pilot means to him 4. Having packed all their things 5. After studying him for a further moment 6. It is natural for small children 7. Looking over his shoulder 8. All seemed 9. With her eyes closed10. Being an outstanding writer 11. She sat at the table looking 12. Taking his mother's hand 13. To have a part in this play.... 14. It will be important for his health 15. To have such a thing happen 16. Frankly speaking 17. To tell the truth 18. By introducing new educational means 19. He was proud to have been working 20. We know her 21. To find out 22. He made as if to speak

11. Complete the following sentences using the non-finite forms of the verb.

1. Is it worth ...? 2 Did you enjoy ...? 3. They watched him 4. Why did you insist on ...? 5. Isn't it strange that he objects to ...? 6. She was surprised when she saw him 7. Obviously she seems 8. Why don't you try ...? 9. I am going 10. He can't afford 11. He was heard 12. I remember he used 13. Obviously the only way is 14. A few days later he came 15. He tried to remember how.... 16. Inside, he lit the gas and began 17. She did not stop 18. She got up and looked quite prepared 19. He knew it 20. Something terrible is going 21. He wanted 22. Why do you want me ...! 23. He appeared 24. I believed him 25. Suddenly he found her

REFERENCE

1. Walker, E. Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students / E. Walker, S. Elsworth. – Harlow: Pearson Education Limited, 2000. – 204 p.
2. Vince, M. First Certificate Language Practice / M. Vince, P. Emmerson. – Oxford: Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2003. – 343 p.
3. Черноватий Л.М. Практична грамати́ка англійської мови з вправами: Базовий курс. Навчальний посібник для ВНЗ / Л.М. Черноватий. – Вінниця: Нова книга, 2007. – 248 с.
4. Evans, V. FCE Usage of English for the revised Cambridge examination 1 /V. Evans. – Cambridge: Express Publishing, 1998. – 219 p.
5. Evans, V. FCE Usage of English for the revised Cambridge examination 2 /V. Evans. – Cambridge: Express Publishing, 2000. – 235 p.
6. Thompson, A. J. A Practical English Grammar Exercises 1 / F. J. Thomson, A.V. Martinet. – Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1986. – 181 p.
7. Swan, M. How English Works. A Grammar Practice Book / M. Swan, Walter. – Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2002. – 358 p.
8. Vince, M. Advanced Language Practice / M. Vince. – Oxford: Publishers Limited, 2003. – 326 p.
9. Неособові форми дієслова: Навчальний посібник (англійською мовою)
10. Котнюк, Л. Г., Білюк, І. Л., Євченко, В. В., Зорницька, І. В., Левченко, О. М. (2019) Неособові форми дієслова: Навчальний посібник (англійською мовою). ЖККГВ «Полісся», Житомир.

Навчальне видання

**КОШЕЛЄВА Марина Володимирівна
БЛЯК Ірина Валеріївна
ПАНЬКОВИК Наталія миколаївна**

**THE NON-FINITE FORMS
OF THE VERB**

Безособові форми дієслова

Навчальний посібник

Коректор – Ірина ГАЙДАЙ
Електронне видання
Формат
Гарнітура Times New Roman
Умовн. друк. арк. 5,5

Державний університет «Житомирська політехніка»
м. Житомир, вул. Чуднівська, 103

